

# Galaxy Ace II e

P O R T A B L E   Q U A D - B A N D  
M O B I L E   P H O N E

User Manual

Please read this manual before operating your  
phone and keep it for future reference.



## Intellectual Property

All Intellectual Property, as defined below, owned by or which is otherwise the property of Samsung or its respective suppliers relating to the SAMSUNG Phone, including but not limited to, accessories, parts, or software relating there to (the "Phone System"), is proprietary to Samsung and protected under federal laws, state laws, and international treaty provisions. Intellectual Property includes, but is not limited to, inventions (patentable or unpatentable), patents, trade secrets, copyrights, software, computer programs, and related documentation and other works of authorship. You may not infringe or otherwise violate the rights secured by the Intellectual Property. Moreover, you agree that you will not (and will not attempt to) modify, prepare derivative works of, reverse engineer, decompile, disassemble, or otherwise attempt to create source code from the software. No title to or ownership in the Intellectual Property is transferred to you. All applicable rights of the Intellectual Property shall remain with SAMSUNG and its suppliers.

### *Open Source Software*

Some software components of this product incorporate source code covered under GNU General Public License (GPL), GNU Lesser General Public License (LGPL), OpenSSL License, BSD License and other open source licenses. To obtain the source code covered under the open source licenses, please visit:

<http://opensource.samsung.com>.

## Disclaimer of Warranties; Exclusion of Liability

EXCEPT AS SET FORTH IN THE EXPRESS WARRANTY CONTAINED ON THE WARRANTY PAGE ENCLOSED WITH THE PRODUCT, THE PURCHASER TAKES THE PRODUCT "AS IS", AND SAMSUNG MAKES NO EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTY OF ANY KIND WHATSOEVER WITH RESPECT TO THE PRODUCT, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE MERCHANTABILITY OF THE PRODUCT OR ITS FITNESS FOR ANY PARTICULAR PURPOSE OR USE; THE DESIGN, CONDITION OR QUALITY OF THE PRODUCT; THE PERFORMANCE OF THE PRODUCT; THE WORKMANSHIP OF THE PRODUCT OR THE COMPONENTS CONTAINED THEREIN; OR COMPLIANCE OF THE PRODUCT WITH THE REQUIREMENTS OF ANY LAW, RULE, SPECIFICATION OR CONTRACT PERTAINING THERETO. NOTHING CONTAINED IN THE INSTRUCTION MANUAL SHALL BE CONSTRUED TO CREATE AN EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTY OF ANY KIND WHATSOEVER WITH RESPECT TO THE PRODUCT. IN ADDITION, SAMSUNG SHALL NOT BE LIABLE FOR ANY DAMAGES OF ANY KIND RESULTING FROM THE PURCHASE OR USE OF THE PRODUCT OR ARISING FROM THE BREACH OF THE EXPRESS WARRANTY, INCLUDING INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, OR LOSS OF ANTICIPATED PROFITS OR BENEFITS.

SAMSUNG IS NOT LIABLE FOR PERFORMANCE ISSUES OR INCOMPATIBILITIES CAUSED BY YOUR EDITING OF REGISTRY SETTINGS, OR YOUR MODIFICATION OF OPERATING SYSTEM SOFTWARE.

USING CUSTOM OPERATING SYSTEM SOFTWARE MAY CAUSE YOUR DEVICE AND APPLICATIONS TO WORK IMPROPERLY.

©2013 Samsung Electronics Canada, Inc.

Samsung is a registered trademark of Samsung Electronics Co., Ltd.

Nuance<sup>®</sup>, VSuite<sup>™</sup>, T9<sup>®</sup> Text Input, and the Nuance logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Nuance Communications, Inc., or its affiliates in the United States and/or other countries.

ACCESS<sup>®</sup> and NetFront<sup>™</sup> are trademarks or registered trademarks of ACCESS Co., Ltd. in Japan and other countries.

The Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> word mark, figure mark (stylized "B Design"), and combination mark (Bluetooth word mark and "B Design") are registered trademarks and are wholly owned by the Bluetooth SIG.

microSD<sup>™</sup> and the microSD logo are Trademarks of the SD Card Association.

Openwave<sup>®</sup> is a registered Trademark of Openwave, Inc.

Google, the Google logo, Android, the Android logo, Google Play, Gmail, Google Mail, Google Maps, Google Music, Google Talk, Picasa, YouTube and other marks are trademarks of Google Inc.

Wi-Fi is a registered trademark of the Wireless Fidelity Alliance, Inc.

Swype and the Swype logos are trademarks of Swype, Inc. © 2010 Swype, Inc. All rights reserved.



## *Dynamic Noise Suppression from Audience*

Your phone is equipped with an advanced voice processing chip that delivers clear mobile calls by suppressing background noise, intermittent sounds (like a siren or nearby conversation), and echoes, allowing you to hear and be heard nearly anywhere.

### **How Does t Work?**

Based on the intelligence of the human hearing system, the technology:

- Captures, evaluates and distinguishes all the sound signals surrounding your phone, and the person you're speaking with.
- Then isolates the primary voice in conversation and filters out the background noise - so the person you're calling hears only your voice, without disturbing background noise.
- Dynamically equalizes and adjusts voice volume to optimize your calling experience, so you can hear clearly and don't need to speak louder to overcome surrounding noise.

The noise suppression technology is built-in and already enabled in your new mobile phone. So it's ready to provide unsurpassed voice clarity with every call.

## IC Notice

This device complies with Industry Canada licence-exempt RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- (1) this device may not cause interference, and
- (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

# Table of Contents

---

## Section 1: Getting Started ..... 1

Understanding this User Manual .....	1
Battery Cover .....	2
Battery .....	5
Installing the microSD Memory Card .....	6
Charging the Battery .....	7
Extending Your Battery Life .....	9
Initial Device Configuration .....	10
Switching the Device On or Off .....	11
Restarting the Device .....	11
Locking and Unlocking the Device .....	12
Creating a New Google Account .....	12
Signing into Your Google Account .....	13
Retrieving your Google Account Password ....	13
Confirming the Default Image and Video Storage Location .....	14
Creating a Samsung Account .....	14
Voice Mail .....	15
Task Manager .....	16

Google Search .....	17
---------------------	----

## Section 2: Understanding Your Device .....18

Features of Your Device .....	18
Front View .....	19
Back View .....	20
Device Display .....	21
Status Bar .....	21
Function Keys .....	27
Home Screen .....	27
Applications .....	30
Screen Navigation .....	37
Using Gestures .....	39
Menu Navigation .....	40
Customizing the Screens .....	42

## Section 3: Memory Card .....48

SD card Overview .....	48
------------------------	----

## Section 4: Call Functions and Contacts List .51

Displaying Your Phone Number .....	51
Making a Call .....	51

Ending a Call .....	52	Finding a Contact .....	85
Making Emergency Calls .....	53	Contact List Options .....	88
Dialing Options .....	54	Contact Menu Options .....	89
Answering a Call .....	55	Contact Entry Options .....	90
Managing Reject Calls .....	55	Joining Contact Information .....	91
International Calls .....	56	Sending a Namecard .....	93
Pause Dialing .....	57	Copying Contact Information .....	94
Redialing the Last Number .....	57	Synchronizing Contacts .....	95
Speed Dialing .....	58	Display Options .....	96
Using S Voice .....	59	Adding more Contacts via Accounts and Sync ..	96
In Call Options .....	60	Additional Contact Options .....	98
Logs Tab .....	65	Groups .....	99
<b>Section 5: Entering Text .....</b>	<b>68</b>	The Favorites Tab .....	101
Text Input Methods .....	68	<b>Section 7: Messages .....</b>	<b>102</b>
Selecting the Text Input Method .....	68	Types of Messages .....	102
Entering Text Using Swype .....	69	Creating and Sending Messages .....	103
Using the Samsung Keyboard .....	75	Message Options .....	104
Samsung Keyboard Settings .....	78	Viewing Newly Received Messages .....	107
Using the Google Voice Typing .....	80	Deleting Messages .....	109
<b>Section 6: Contacts .....</b>	<b>82</b>	Message Search .....	110
Accounts .....	82	Messaging Settings .....	110
Contacts List .....	82	Assigning Messages as Spam .....	113

Accessing Your Spam Folder .....	114	Removing Music Files .....	150
Text Templates .....	114	YouTube .....	150
Email .....	115	<b>Section 9: Applications and Development ..151</b>	
Microsoft Exchange Email (Outlook) .....	119	Applications .....	151
Using Gmail .....	124	Calculator .....	151
Talk .....	126	Camera .....	152
Google+ .....	127	ChatON .....	152
Messenger .....	127	Chrome .....	152
ChatON .....	128	Clock .....	153
<b>Section 8: Multimedia ..... 129</b>		Contacts .....	155
Assigning the Default Storage Location .....	129	Downloads .....	155
Using the Camera .....	130	Email .....	156
Camera Options .....	131	Flipboard .....	156
Using the Camcorder .....	137	Gallery .....	156
The Gallery .....	141	Gmail .....	156
Using the Video Player .....	141	Google .....	157
Play Movies .....	142	Google Settings .....	157
Play Music .....	142	Google+ .....	157
Music Player .....	147	Internet .....	157
Using Playlists .....	149	Local .....	157
Creating a Playlist .....	149	Maps .....	158
Transferring Music Files .....	150	Memo .....	160

Messaging .....	161
Messenger .....	161
Music Player .....	162
My Files .....	162
Navigation .....	163
Phone .....	165
Play Books .....	165
Play Magazines .....	166
Play Movies .....	166
Play Music .....	166
Play Store .....	167
Downloading a New Google Application ....	167
Launching an Installed Google Application ...	168
Android Development .....	168
Polaris Office 4.0 .....	169
S Planner .....	170
S Voice .....	172
Samsung Apps .....	172
Settings .....	172
Talk .....	172
Video Hub .....	173
Video Player .....	173

Voice Recorder .....	173
Voice Search .....	174
YouTube .....	174
<b>Section 10: Connections .....</b>	<b>177</b>
Web .....	177
Bluetooth .....	184
Enable Downloading for Web Applications ...	188
PC Connections .....	188
Kies Air .....	189
Wi-Fi .....	190
USB Tethering .....	193
Portable HotSpot .....	194
<b>Section 11: Changing Your Settings .....</b>	<b>196</b>
Accessing Settings .....	196
Wi-Fi Settings .....	196
Bluetooth settings .....	200
Data Usage .....	201
More Settings .....	202
Call Settings .....	207
Home Screen Mode .....	213
Blocking Mode .....	214
Sound Settings .....	214

Display Settings .....	216	Acknowledging Special Precautions and Industry	
SD Card & Device Storage .....	217	Canada Notice .....	249
Power Saving Mode .....	217	Owner's Record .....	251
Battery Usage .....	218	<b>Index .....</b>	<b>252</b>
Application Manager .....	218		
Location Services .....	220		
Lock Screen .....	221		
Security .....	227		
Language and Input Settings .....	230		
Back up and Reset .....	236		
Add Account .....	238		
Motion Settings .....	239		
Accessory .....	240		
Date and Time .....	240		
Accessibility Settings .....	241		
Developer Options .....	242		
About Device .....	245		
<b>Section 12: Health and Safety .....</b>	<b>246</b>		
Getting the Most Out of Your Reception .....	246		
Maintaining Safe Use of and Access to Your Phone			
246			
Caring for the Battery .....	248		





## Section 1: Getting Started

---

This section explains how to get started with your device by installing and charging the battery, installing the SIM card and optional memory card, and setting up your voice mail.

Before using your phone for the first time, you'll need to install and charge the battery and install the SIM card. The SIM card is loaded with your subscription details, such as your PIN, available optional services, and many other features. If desired, you can also install an SD card to store media for use with your phone.

### Understanding this User Manual

The sections of this manual generally follow the features of your phone. A robust index for features begins on page 252.

This manual provides navigation instructions according to the default display settings. If you select other settings, navigation may be different.

Unless otherwise specified, all instructions in this manual assume you are starting from the Home screen and using the available keys.

---

**Note:** Instructions in this manual are based on default settings, and may vary from your device, depending on the software version on your device, and any changes to the device's Settings.

Unless stated otherwise, instructions in this User Manual start with the device unlocked, at the Home screen.

All screen images in this manual are simulated. Actual displays may vary, depending on the software version of your device and any changes to the device's Settings.

---

## Special Text

Throughout this manual, you'll find text that is set apart from the rest. These are intended to point out important information, share quick methods for activating features, to define terms, and more. The definitions for these methods are as follows:


- **Notes:** Presents alternative options for the current feature, menu, or sub-menu.
- **Tips:** Provides quick or innovative methods, or useful shortcuts.
- **Important:** Points out important information about the current feature that could affect performance.
- **Warning:** Brings to your attention important information to prevent loss of data or functionality, or even prevent damage to your phone.

## Text Conventions

This manual provides condensed information about how to use your phone. To make this possible, the following text conventions are used to represent often-used steps:

- Arrows are used to represent the sequence of selecting successive options in longer, or repetitive, procedures.

---


**Example:** From the Home screen, press  (Menu) → Settings → Bluetooth.

---

## Battery Cover

The battery, SIM card and SD card are installed under the battery cover.

---

**Important!** Before removing or replacing the battery cover, make sure the device is switched off. To turn the phone off, hold down the  key until the Device options screen displays, then tap **Power off**.

---

---

**Caution!** Do not bend or twist the back cover excessively during installation or removal. Doing so may damage the cover.


---

**To remove the battery cover:**

1. Hold the device firmly and locate the cover release latch.
2. Place your fingernail in the opening and firmly “pop” the cover off the device.

## SIM Card Overview

---

**Important!** Before removing or replacing the SIM card, make sure the device is switched off. To turn the phone off, hold down the  key until the Device options screen displays, then tap **Power off**.

---

The SIM card is loaded with your subscription details such as your telephone number, PIN, optional services, and many other features.

---

**Important!** The SIM card and its information can be easily damaged by scratching or bending, so be careful when handling, inserting, or removing the card. Keep all SIM cards out of reach of small children.

---

Some features on your device may require that you update your SIM card. To obtain this new SIM card, call or contact customer service for more information.

This card contains the necessary information for identifying and authenticating the user to the IMS (IP Multimedia Subsystem). If available, you can remove the previous SIM and replace it with the new one.



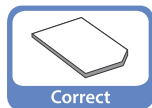
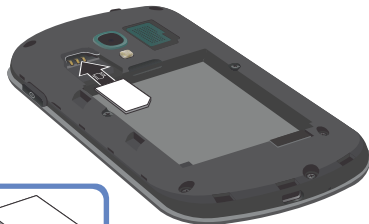
To replace the battery cover:

- Position the battery cover over the battery compartment and press down until you hear a click.

## Installing and Removing the SIM card

### To install the S M card:

1. Carefully slide the SIM card into the SIM card socket until the card clicks into place.



2. Make sure that the card's gold contacts face into the device and that the angled corner of the card is positioned as shown.

### To remove the S M card:

1. Remove the battery cover.
2. Carefully place your fingernail into the end of the SIM slot and push the card slightly out.
3. Carefully slide the SIM card out of the SIM card socket.

---


**Note:** If the card is not inserted correctly, the device will not detect it and no service will be available. If this happens, turn off the device, remove the card, and reinstall the card in the correct orientation.

---

## Battery

Before using your device for the first time, install the battery and charge it fully.

---

**Important!** Before removing or replacing the battery, make sure the device is switched off. To turn the device off, hold down the  key until the Device options screen displays, then tap **Power off**.

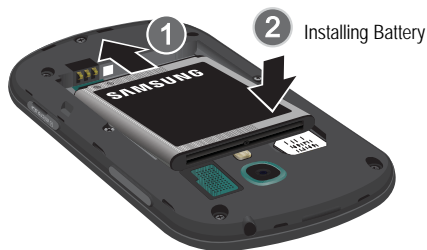
---

### Installing the Battery

1. Slide the battery into the compartment (1) so that the tabs on the end align with the slots at the bottom of the phone, making sure the connectors align.
2. Gently press down to secure the battery (2).

### Removing the Battery

- Grip the battery at the top end (3) and lift it up and out of the battery compartment (4).



## Installing the microSD Memory Card

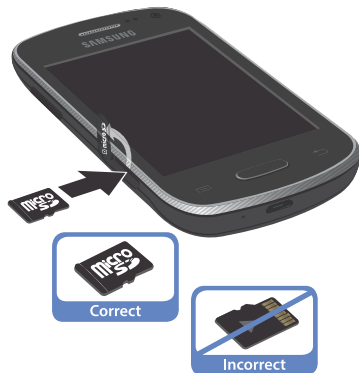
Your phone supports an optional (external) microSD™ or microSDHC™ memory card up to 32GB for storage of media such as music, pictures, video and other files.

---

**Note:** microSD memory cards are available in capacities up to 2GB. microSDHC™ memory cards range from 4GB to 32GB.

---

1. Locate the microSD card slot on the side of the device and carefully open the microSD card slot cover.
2. Orient the card with the gold contacts facing down.
3. Firmly press the card into the slot until it locks into place. For more information on how to use the SD card see *"Memory Card"* on page 48.
4. Place the cover securely back over the slot.



## Removing the microSD Memory Card

1. Locate the microSD card slot on the side of the device and carefully open the microSD card slot cover.
2. Firmly press the card into the slot until it releases. The card should pop partially out of the slot.
3. Remove the card from the slot.
4. Place the cover securely back over the slot.

## Charging the Battery

Your device is powered by a rechargeable Li-ion battery. A wall charger for charging the battery is included with your phone. Use only approved batteries and chargers. Ask your local Samsung dealer for further details.

Before using your device for the first time, you should fully charge the battery. A discharged battery recharges fully in approximately 4 hours.



---

**Note:** Verify that the battery is installed prior to connecting the wall charger. If the wall charger is connected and the battery is not installed, the handset will power on continuously and prevent proper operation. Failure to unplug the wall charger before you remove the battery can damage the phone.

---

---

**Important!** It is recommended that you fully charge the battery before using your device for the first time.

---

1. Locate the Charger/Accessory jack.
2. Insert the USB cable into the Charger/Accessory jack.

3. Plug the charging head into a standard AC power outlet. The device turns on with the screen locked and indicates both its charge state and percent of charge.

---

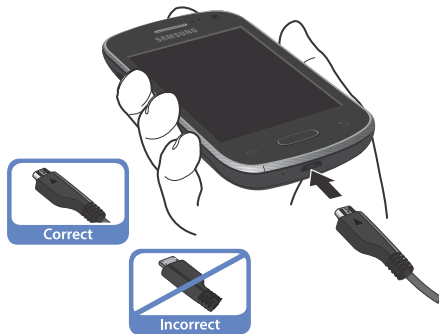
**Warning!** While the device is charging, if the touch screen does not function due to an unstable power supply unplug the USB power adapter from the power outlet or unplug the USB cable from the device.

---

---

**Note:** This illustration displays both the **correct** and **incorrect** orientation for connecting the charger. If the charger is incorrectly connected, damage to the accessory port will occur, voiding the phone's warranty.

---



4. When charging is finished, first unplug the charger's power plug from the AC wall outlet, then disconnect the charger's connector from the phone.

---

**Important!** The touch screen responds best to a light touch from the pad of your finger or a non-metallic stylus. Using excessive force or a metallic object when pressing on the touch screen may damage the tempered glass surface and void the warranty.

---





## Low Battery Indicator

When the battery level is low and only a few minutes of talk time remain (~15% charge), a warning tone sounds and the “Battery low” message repeats at regular intervals on the display. In this condition, your device conserves its remaining battery power by dimming the backlight.

When the battery level becomes too low, the device automatically turns off.

The on-screen battery charge is represented (by default) as a colored battery icon. You can also choose to display a percentage value. Having a percentage value on-screen can provide a better idea of the remaining charge on the battery.

- Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **Display** → **Display battery percentage**.

For more information, refer to “*Display Settings*” on page 216.

## Extending Your Battery Life

Active applications, light levels, Bluetooth usage, and GPS functionality all act to drain your battery. The following is a list of helpful tips that can help conserve your battery power:

- Reduce your backlight on time.
- Turn Bluetooth off when not in use.
- Turn Wi-Fi off when not in use.

- Deactivate the GPS when not needed. Most applications using this function will periodically query the GPS satellites for your current location; each query drains your battery.
- Do not wait until your battery is completely depleted before charging your device. Repeating this process of a complete discharge and recharge can reduce the storage capacity of any battery over time.
- Turn off Automatic application sync.
- Use the Power Saving feature to deactivate some hardware and interface functions.
- Check the Battery use screen to review what features or functions have been consuming your battery resources.
- Check the Running Services and close any unnecessary applications.
- Use the Task Manager feature to end/shutdown background applications that are still running. These minimized applications can, over time, cause your device to “slow down”.
- Turn off any streaming services after use (see Running Services).
- Animated wallpapers use processing power, memory, and more power. Change your Live Wallpaper to a non-animated Wallpaper gallery or Gallery image.

## Initial Device Configuration



---

**Note:** If prompted to undergo a software update, tap **Cancel** to proceed with the initial configuration of the device.

---

1. Select a language from the associated field. **English** is the default language.
2. Tap **Start**.
3. If prompted, select an available Wi-Fi network and follow the on-screen connection process, or tap **Skip** to continue.
4. At the Date and time screen, tap **Automatic date and time** to use network-provided time or tap **Set date**, **Set time** and **Select time zone** and configure the settings. Tap **Next**.
5. If you have previously created a Samsung account, tap **Sign in**.  
– or –  
If this is your first time, tap **Create new account**. Follow the on-screen setup instructions.  
– or –


Tap **Skip** to continue without creating or signing into the Samsung Account. For more information, refer to *“Creating a Samsung Account”* on page 14.

6. At the **Got Google?** screen, choose either **Yes** to log into your existing Google account or **No** to continue.
  - If you selected **Yes**, on the Sign in screen, enter your current Google Email and Password information and tap  **Next**.
  - Tap **OK** to agree to the Google legal agreements.
  - If prompted to enable purchases, tap **Set up credit card** and enter your credit card information and click **Save**, or click **Skip** to continue without entering this information.
7. If you indicated that you did not have a current Google account, then at the **Make it Google** screen, choose either **Get an account** to create a new account or **Not now** to continue.
8. Select/deselect the desired Google location services and tap  **(Next)**.

---


**Note:** Enabling Google location services can drain battery power.

---

9. When prompted, personalize your device by entering a **First and Last name** then tap  (Next). This will help to identify this as your device.
10. If prompted with an Optional setting, tap **Enable easy mode setup?** and follow the on-screen instructions to configure your Home screen mode. For more information, refer to *“Adjusting the Home Screen Mode”* on page 43.
11. Tap **Finish** to complete your configuration process. Go through the on-screen tutorial.

## Switching the Device On or Off



Once the device has been configured, you will not be prompted with setup screens again.

1. Press and hold  until the device switches on.  
The device searches for your network and after finding it, you can make or receive calls.



---

**Note:** The display language is preset to English at the factory. To change the language, use the Language menu. For more information, refer to *“Language and Input Settings”* on page 230.

---

2. Press and hold  (Power/End) until the Device options screen appears.
3. Tap **Power off** ().

## Restarting the Device

1. Press and hold  (Power/End) until the Device options screen appears.
2. Tap **Restart** (.

## Locking and Unlocking the Device

By default, the device screen locks when the backlight turns off.

- Place your finger on the screen and swipe the glass in any of the directions shown unlock the device.



---


**Note:** You can choose to configure lock settings to prevent unauthorized use of your device. For more information, refer to “*Setting up SIM Card Lock*” on page 228.

---

## Creating a New Google Account

You should create a Google™ Account when you first use your device in order to fully utilize the functionality. This account provides access to several device features such as Gmail™, Google+™, Talk™, and the Google Play Store™ applications. Before you are able to access Google applications, you must enter your account information. These applications sync between your device and your online Google account.

**To create a new Google Account from your device:**

1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings** → **Add account** → **Google**.
2. Read the introduction and tap **New** to begin.
3. Follow the on-screen instructions to create a Google Account.

---

**Note:** If you already have a Google account, you only need to sign in.

---

To create a new Google Account from the Web:

1. From a computer, launch a Web browser and navigate to [www.google.com](http://www.google.com).
2. On the main page, click **Sign-in** → **Create an account for free**.
3. Follow the on-screen prompts to create your free account.
4. Look for an email from Google in the email box you provided, and respond to the email to confirm and activate your new account.

## Signing into Your Google Account

1. Launch an application that requires a Google account (such as Play Store or Gmail).
2. Click **Existing**.
3. Tap the **Email** and **Password** fields and enter your information.
4. Tap **Done**. Your device communicates with the Google servers to confirm your information.
5. If prompted, create a new Gmail username by entering a prefix for your **@gmail.com** email address.

## Retrieving your Google Account Password

A Google account password is required for Google applications. If you misplace or forget your Google Account password, follow these instructions to retrieve it:

1. From your computer, use an Internet browser and navigate to <http://google.com/accounts>.
2. Click on the **Can't access your account?** link.
3. Follow the on-screen password recovery procedure.



## Confirming the Default Image and Video Storage Location

---

**Note:** If you do not have a memory card installed in the phone, pictures and videos are automatically saved to the phone. If a memory card is installed, pictures and videos are stored on the card by default.

---

It is recommended that you verify the storage location for pictures and videos or change it before initiating the use of the camera or camcorder so you will know where to retrieve your files.

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Camera).
2. From the viewfinder screen, tap  (Settings) and scroll down to the **Storage** entry.
3. Tap this entry and select the desired default storage location for newly taken pictures or videos. Choose from: **Phone** or **Memory card**.

---

**Note:** It is recommended that you set the option to **Memory card**.

---

4. Press  to return to the Home screen.

## Creating a Samsung Account

---


An active Samsung account is required to access Samsung applications such as Media Hub.

---

**Note:** The Samsung account application will manage your access to Samsung applications; you will not require different passwords for each application.

---

To create a new \samsung account:

1. From the Home screen, tap  and then tap **Settings** → **Add account** → **Samsung account**.
2. Tap **Create new account**.
3. Tap **Terms and conditions** and **Privacy policy** to read the legal disclaimers and related information.
4. If you agree to the terms, place a green check mark in the **I accept all the terms above** field and tap **Agree**.
5. Enter your the required information and tap **Sign up**.

---

**Note:** You may be prompted to confirm your credentials via email.

---

6. Verify your account via email by accessing the email address provided during setup and following the steps outlined to complete your registration.

– or –

If you have already setup your email account on the device, tap **Go to Mailbox** and follow the on-screen instructions.

– or –

If you have already verified your email address, tap **Activate account**.

---

**Note:** Without confirming your email address and following the documented procedures, related applications will not function properly since it is Samsung account that is managing their username and password access.

---

## Voice Mail

### *Setting Up Your Voice Mail*

Your device automatically transfers all unanswered calls to voicemail, even if your device is in use or turned off. To retrieve your voicemail messages, activate your voicemail account.

---

**Important!** Always use a password to protect against unauthorized access.



---

For new users, follow the instructions below to set up voicemail:

---



**Note:** Voicemail setup may be different depending on your network.

---

1. From the Home screen, tap  and then touch and hold the  key until the device dials voicemail. You may be prompted to enter a password.
2. Follow the tutorial to create a password, a greeting, and a display name.

## Accessing Your Voice Mail

To access Voicemail:

1. From the Home screen, tap  and then touch and hold  until the device dials voice mail.
2. When connected, follow the voice prompts from the voice mail center.

## Accessing Your Voice Mail From Another Phone

1. Dial your wireless phone number.
2. When you hear your voicemail greeting, press the asterisk key (\*) on the phone you are using.
3. Enter your passcode.

## Task Manager

Your device can run applications simultaneously, with some applications running in the background.



Sometimes your device might seem to slow down over time, and the biggest reason for this is background applications. These are applications that were not properly closed or shutdown and are still active but minimized. The Task Manager lets you see which of these applications are still active in the background and choose which applications are left running and which are closed.

---

**Note:** The more applications running on your device, the high energy drain on your battery.

---



## Task Manager Overview

- Press and hold  (Home) and then tap  (Task manager). This screen contains the following tabs:
  - **Active applications** display those currently active applications running on your device.
  - **Downloaded** displays any installed packages or applications from the Play Store that are taking up memory space. Tap **Uninstall** to remove them from your phone.



- **RAM**, which displays the amount of current RAM (Random Access Memory) currently being used and allow you to **Clear Memory**.
- **Storage** displays a visual graph indicating the available and used space within the System storage, USB storage, and external SD card.
- **Help** provides additional battery saving and RAM management techniques.


### Shutting Down an Currently Active Application

1. Press and hold  (Home) and then tap  (Task manager).
2. From the **Active applications** tab, tap **End** to close selected applications.  
– or –  
Tap **End all** to close all background running applications.

## Google Search

Provides an on-screen Internet search engine powered by Google™.



### To launch Google Search:

1. Tap the Google Search Bar and enter the search text or tap  on the Google Search bar and say the search information.

– or –

Press and hold  (Home) and then tap  (Google Search).

– or –

From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Google) and enter the search text.

2. Follow the on-screen instructions to review the available information.

## Section 2: Understanding Your Device

---

This section outlines key features of your device. It also describes the device's keys, screen and the icons that display when the device is in use.

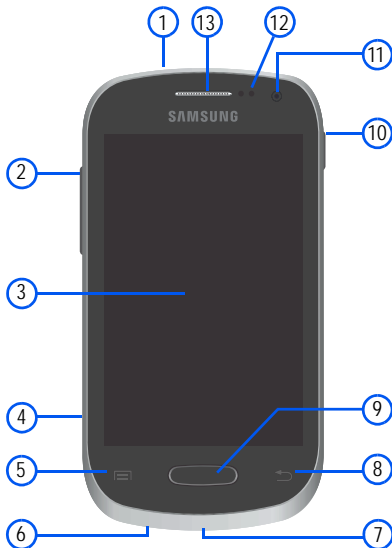
### Features of Your Device

Your device is lightweight, easy-to-use and offers many significant features. The following list outlines a few of the features included in your device.

- Touch screen with virtual (on-screen) QWERTY keyboard
- High Speed Packet Access Plus (HSPA+) delivering data speeds faster than the current 3G network technology.
- Android v 4.1.2, Jelly Bean platform
- Wi-Fi<sup>®</sup> capability
- USB tethering-capable
- Bluetooth enabled
- Full Integration of Google Mobile™ Services (Gmail, YouTube, Google Maps, Google Voice Search)
- Multiple Messaging Options: Text/Picture/Video Messaging and Google Talk™
- Corporate and personal Email
- 5 Megapixel camera with autofocus and digital zoom
- 1.9 Megapixel Front Facing camera
- Music Player with multitasking features
- Over 700,000 Apps available to download from the Google Play™ Store
- Pre-loaded e-reader applications such as: Play Books™ and Play Magazines™
- Google Play Music™
- Assisted GPS (Google Navigation)
- Webkit-based browser
- Expandable memory slot - supports up to 32GB
- Mobile HotSpot capability
- SWYPE™ text input technology
- Video Chat via Google Talk
- HD Video Player 720p
  - Codec: MPEG4, H.264, H.263, VC-1, WMV7/8, VP8, MP43
  - Format: 3GP (MP4), WMV (ASF), and AVI

## Front View

The following illustrations show the main elements of your device: The numbered list correlates to the illustrations.

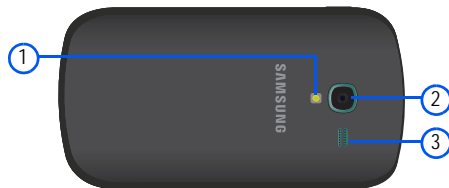


1. **Headset jack** allows you to connect a hands-free headset so you can listen to music.
2. **Volume key** allows you to adjust the ringer volume in standby mode, adjust the voice volume during a call, or mute the ringtone when receiving an incoming call (press volume down)
3. **Display** shows all the information needed to operate your phone, such as the connection status, received signal strength, phone battery level, and time.
4. **microSD Card Slot** (internal) allows you use a microSD card to expand the memory of your phone.
5. **Menu key** displays a list of options available for the current screen. From the Home screen it displays Add apps and widgets, Create folder, Set wallpaper, Edit page, Search, and Settings options.
6. **Microphone** is used during phone calls and allows other callers to hear you clearly when you are speaking to them. It is also used to make voice note recordings and record stereo audio during ideo recordings.

7. **USB Power/Accessory connector** allows you to connect a power cable or optional accessories such as a USB/ data cable.
8. **Back key** redisplay the previous screen or clears entries.
9. **Home key** displays the Home screen when pressed.
10. **Power/End key** ends a call or switches the phone off and on. Press and hold for two seconds to access Silent mode or Flight mode, turn the device on or off, or Restart.
11. **Front Facing Camera** allows you to take pictures while facing the screen and allows you to video conference.
12. **Proximity Sensor** detects how close an object is to the surface of the screen. This is typically used to detect when your face is close to the screen, such as during a phone call.
  - While talking on the phone, the sensor detects talk activity and locks the keypad to prevent accidental key presses.
13. **Receiver** allows you to hear the other all participant and the different ring tones and sounds generated by your device.

## Back View

The following illustration shows the external elements of your device:



1. **Flash** is used to take photos in low-light conditions.
2. **Camera lens** is used to take photos.
3. **External speaker** allows you to hear ringers, music, and other sounds provided by your phone.

## Device Display



Your display provides information about the device's status, and is the interface to manage features. It indicates your connection status, signal strength, battery status and time. Icons display at the top of the device when an incoming call or message is received and also alerts you at a specified time when an alarm was set.



The screen also displays notifications, and Application (or shortcut) bar with five primary shortcuts: Phone, Contacts, Messaging, Internet, and Applications.

### Display settings

In this menu, you can change various settings for the wallpaper, brightness, backlight, etc.

- From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Settings) → Display. For more information, refer to "Display Settings" on page 216.

### Status Bar

The Status Bar shows information about the connection status, signal strength, battery level, and time, and displays notifications about incoming messages, calls and other actions.

## Indicator Icons

This list identifies the symbols you'll see on your device's display and Indicator area:



Displays your current signal strength. The greater the number of bars, the stronger the signal.



Indicates that the Flight Mode is active. You cannot send or receive any calls or access online information.



Indicates there is no signal available.



Displays when there is no SIM card in the phone.



Displays when there is a system error or alert.



Displays when a call is in progress. Displayed in the Status bar when the current call is minimized.



Displays when a call is on hold. Displayed in the Status bar when the current call is minimized.



Displays when you have missed an incoming call.



Displays when your device is set to automatically reject all incoming calls. The All numbers option is enabled from within the **Call settings** → **Call rejection** → **Auto reject mode** menu.



Displays when the speakerphone is on. Displayed in the Status bar when the current call is minimized.



Displays when the microphone is muted.



Displays when Call forwarding is set to Always forward. Displayed in the Status bar when the current call is minimized. For more information, refer to *"Configuring Additional Voice Call Settings"* on page 211.



Battery is fully charged.



Displays when the battery is 100 percent (fully) charged and the Display battery percentage option is enabled.



Battery is charging.



Battery charge level is low (Charge: ~28% - 15%).



Battery charge level is very low (Charge: ~15% - 5%).



Battery only has about 4% power remaining and device will soon shut down. (Charge: ~4% - 1%).



Displays when connected to an EDGE network.



Displays when your phone is communicating with an EDGE network.



Displays when connected to a 3G network.



Displays when your phone is communicating with the 3G network.



Displays when connected to the HSPA+ network.



Displays when your phone is communicating with the HSPA+ network.



Displays when the phone has detected an active USB connection.



Displays when there is a new text message.



Displays when an outgoing text message has failed to be delivered.



Displays when there is a new voicemail message.



Displays in the notifications window when there is a new Email message.



Displays in the notifications window when there is a new Gmail message.



Displays when a new Google+ notification has been received.



Displays when the time and date for a Calendar Event has arrived. For more information, refer to “*S Planner*” on page 170.



Displays when an alarm is set.  
For more information, refer to *"Clock"* on page 153.



Displays when the device is in Silent mode. All sounds except media and alarms are silenced, and Silent mode is set to **Vibrate**. For more information, refer to *"Silent mode via Device Options Screen"* on page 214.



Displays when the device is in Silent mode. All sounds are silenced, and Silent mode is set to **Mute**.



Displays when the Blocking mode feature is active. For more information, refer to *"Blocking Mode"* on page 214.



Displays when Bluetooth technology is active and enabled.



Displays when the Bluetooth technology is active and communicating with an external device.



Displays when your device is connected being used to control streaming media and is connected to a Digital Living Network Alliance (DLNA) certified device.



Displays when the an outbound file transfer is in progress.



Displays when a file or application download is in progress.



Displays when updates are available for download.



Displays when a Play Store download has completed.



Displays when Wi-Fi is connected, active, and communicating with a Wireless Access Point (WAP).



Displays when Wi-Fi is active and there is an available open wireless network.



Displays when Wi-Fi Direct is active and configured for a direct connection to another compatible device in the same direct communication mode.



Displays when Wi-Fi Direct is communicating with another compatible device.





Displays when the USB Tethering mode is active and communicating. For more information, refer to *"Portable HotSpot"* on page 194.



Displays when the Mobile HotSpot feature is active and communicating. For more information, refer to *"USB Tethering and Mobile HotSpot"* on page 205.



Displays when you are currently in Emergency calling mode. You must exit this mode to resume normal calling function.



Displays in the notifications window when action is required within the Samsung account application.



Displays in the notifications window when there are too many on-screen notification icons to display. Tap to show more notifications.



Tap to select a text input method.



Displays in the notifications window when a song is currently playing within the Music Player.



Displays in the notifications window when a song is currently playing within the Play Music application.



Displays when your device's GPS is on and communicating.



Displays when the external SD card (internal microSD) has been disconnected (unmounted) from the phone and is now ready for either removal or formatting.



Displays when the External SD card is being prepared for mounting to the device. This is required for communication with the card.



Displays when the microSD card has been improperly removed.



Displays when storage within either the internal location or the external SD card has reached its capacity. It is recommended you either move files off or delete them to make additional room.

For more details on configuring your device's settings, see *"Changing Your Settings"* on page 196.

## Notification Bar

The Notification area indicates new message events (data sync status, new messages, calendar events, call status, etc). You can expand this area to provide more detailed information about the current on-screen notification icons.

1. Tap the Status bar to reveal the Notifications tab, and then drag the tab to the bottom of the screen to open the Notifications panel (1).
2. Tap a notification entry to open the associated application (2).

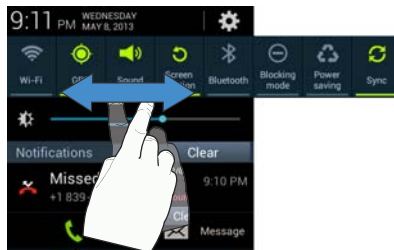


## Clearing Notifications

1. In a single motion, touch and drag the Status bar down to the bottom of the screen to reveal the Notification screen.
2. Tap Clear. The notifications are cleared from the panel.

## Accessing Additional Panel Functions

In addition to notifications, this panel also provides quick and ready access to common device functions. These can be quickly activated or deactivated.




The following functions can either be activated (green) or deactivated (grey): Wi-Fi, GPS, Sound, Screen rotation, Bluetooth, Blocking mode, Power saving, or Sync.

## Function Keys


Your device comes equipped with three main function keys that can be used on any screen: **Home**, **Menu**, and **Back**.

### Home Key


The **Home** key (  ) takes you back to your Home screen (#3 of the 5 available screens).

- Press and hold to launch the Recent apps/Task manager screen. For more information, refer to *"Accessing Recently-Used Applications"* on page 41.

### Menu Key

The **Menu** key (  ) activates an available menu function for the current screen or application. For more information, refer to *"Home Screen Menu Settings"* on page 29.

### Back Key

The **Back** key (  ) returns you to the previously active screen. If the on-screen keyboard is currently open, this key closes the keyboard.

## Home Screen

The Home screen is the starting point for using the applications on your device. There are initially seven available panels, some populated with default shortcuts or applications. You can customize each of these panels.








- **Notification area** displays icons associated with end-user notifications such as: email messages, calls (missed, call in progress), new voicemail, upcoming event, USB connection, emails, and Text/MMS messages.
  - These notifications appear at the top-left of the screen (within the Status bar area) and display important user information.
  - Additional information can be accessed by swiping down from the Status bar (page 26).
- **Status area** displays icons associated with the status of the device such as communication, coverage, Bluetooth, 4G/3G, Wi-Fi communication, battery level, GPS.
- **Home Screen** is a customizable screen that provides information about notifications and device status, and allows access to application Widgets.
- **Extended Home Screens** extend beyond the current visible screen width to provide more space for adding icons, widgets, and other customization features.
  - There are six available extended screens (panels), each of which may be populated with its own shortcuts or widgets. The five Primary Shortcuts appear on each screen.
  - The current screen is indicated near the bottom by a white oval. Up to seven screens are available.

---

**Note:** Both the status bar and primary shortcuts are visible across all screens.


---



- **Google search** is an on-screen Internet search engine powered by Google™. Tap the search box and type the search terms or tap  (**Voice Search**) to access the Voice Search feature where you can verbally enter a search term and initiate an online search.
- **Widgets** are self-contained on-screen applications that can be placed onto any of the available home screens.
- **Shortcuts** are icons that launch available device applications such as Camera, Voicemail, Contacts, Phone, Email, Play Store, etc.
  - Some can be found on the Extended Home screens, all are available on the Applications screens.
  - The Application screens can be accessed by tapping  (**Apps**) from the Primary shortcuts area.
  - Shortcuts can be added to and removed from the home screens any number of times.
- **Primary Shortcuts:** are five shortcuts present throughout all of the available screens and can be used to navigate within the device or launch any of the following functions:
  - **Phone** () launches the phone-related screen functions (Keypad, Logs, Favorites, and Contacts).

- **Contacts** () launches the Contacts-related screens (Phone, Groups, Favourites, and Contacts).
- **Messaging** () launches the Messaging menu (create new messages or open an existing message string).
- **Internet** () launches the built-in Web browser.
- **Apps** launches the Applications screens.
  - Tap  (**Apps**) to access the Application screens.
  - While in the Applications screens, tap  (**Back**) to return to the Home screen.

As you move from screen to screen, a screen indicator (located at the bottom) displays the currently active panel.

## Home Screen Menu Settings

When on the Home screen, press  and select any of the following menu options:

- **Add apps and widgets** accesses the Widget tab where you can drag a selected widget to an available area on a home screen.
- **Create folder** allows you to create on-screen folders to help organize files of application shortcuts.
- **Set wallpaper** allows you to assign the current wallpaper for the Home screen, Lock screen, or Home screen and lock screens. Choose from Gallery, Live wallpapers, or Wallpapers.
- **Edit page** allows you to add, remove and reorganize the extended screens on your device. You can have up to seven screens (one Home screen and six Extended screens).
- **Search** displays the Google Search box that you can use to search for a key term online.
- **Settings** provides quick access to the device's settings menu.
  - The Settings menu can also be accessed by pressing  and then tapping  → **Settings**.


## Applications

The Application (Apps) menu provides quick access to the applications available on your device. Applications display on each of the panels on the Applications screens.

### Application Screen Menu Settings

When on the Apps screen, the following menu options are available:

1. Press  and then tap  (Apps).
2. Press  and then select from the following options:
  - **Play Store:** provides quick access to the Play Store.
  - **Edit:** allows you to add a new folder to the Application screen and then drag/drop an existing application into it. This feature requires the view be set to Customizable view.
  - **Create folder:** allows you to create an application folder where you can better organize and group desired apps.
  - **Uninstall:** allows you to uninstall a downloaded application. Only those applications that are not default to the device can be removed. Tap  to remove the selected app.
  - **View type:** allows you to customize the way the Application menu listing is shown. For more information, refer to *"Adding and Removing Primary Shortcuts"* on page 43.

- **Share apps:** allows you to share information about selected applications with external users. For more information, refer to *"Sharing Application Information"* on page 44.
  - **Hide applications:** allows you to specify which applications can be hidden from view on the Apps page.
  - **Show hidden applications:** allows you to specify which previously hidden applications are can be made visible again for viewing in this menu. Once you have selected the apps, tap **Done**.
3. Press  to return to the Home screen.

The following table contains a description of each application available via both the Primary shortcuts area and via the Applications screens. If the application is already described in another section of this user manual, then a cross reference to that particular section is provided. For information on navigating through the Applications icons, see *"Menu Navigation"* on page 40.



### Calculator

Launches the on-screen calculator application. The calculator provides the basic arithmetic functions and scientific functions.

For more information, refer to *"Calculator"* on page 151.



### Camera

Launches the built-in 5.0 megapixel camera application from where you can take a pictures and videos using either the front or rear facing cameras.

For more information, see *"Using the Camera"* on page 130 and see *"Using the Camcorder"* on page 137.



**ChatON:** With the ChatON application, you can interact with friends and family with text, images, hand-written notes and video shared instantly. You can also chat in groups.

For more information, refer to *"ChatON"* on page 128.



### Chrome

Allows you to use the Google Chrome web browser on your device.

For more information, refer to *"Chrome"* on page 152.



### Clock

Allows you to set an alarm, configure and view the World Clock, use a Stopwatch, set a Timer, or Desk clock. The applications display in a tabular format and quickly accessed with the touch of a finger.

For more information, refer to *"Clock"* on page 153.



### Contacts

You can manage your daily contacts by storing their name and number in your Address Book.

For more information, refer to *"Contacts List"* on page 82.



### Downloads

The Downloads application allows you to manage all of your downloads from the Play Store and the Browser.

For more information, refer to *"Downloads"* on page 155.



### Email

Provides access to both Outlook (Exchange Server-based) email and Internet email accounts (such as Gmail and Yahoo! Mail).

For more information, refer to *"Email"* on page 115.



### Flipboard

This application creates a personalized digital magazine. Access news stories, personal feeds and other related material.

For more information, refer to *"Flipboard"* on page 156.



### Gallery

The Gallery is where you view photos and play back videos. For photos, you can also view a slideshow, set photos as wallpaper or contact image, and share as a picture message. For more information, refer to *"The Gallery"* on page 141.



### Gmail

Provides access to your Gmail account. Google Mail (Gmail) is a web-based email service. Gmail is configured when you first set up your phone.

For more information, refer to *"Using Gmail"* on page 124.



### Google

Provides an on-screen Internet search engine powered by Google™. For more information, refer to *"Google"* on page 157.



**Google Settings:** provides shortcuts to settings for Google+, Maps, Latitude, Location, Search, and Ads.



### Google+

This application makes messaging and sharing with your friends a lot easier. You can set up Circles of friends, visit the Stream to get updates from your Circles, use Messenger for fast messaging with everyone in your Circles, or use Instant Upload to automatically upload videos and photos to your own private album on Google+.

For more information, refer to *"Google+"* on page 127.





### Internet

Open the browser to start surfing the web. The browser is fully optimized and comes with advanced functionality to enhance the Internet browsing feature on your phone.

For more information, refer to *"Web"* on page 177.



### Local

Local is an application that uses Google Maps and your location to help you find Restaurants, Cafes, Bars, Attractions, and more. You can also add your own locations.

For more information, refer to *"Local"* on page 157.



### Maps

Launches a Web-based dynamic map that helps you find local businesses, locate friends, view maps and get driving directions.

For more information, refer to *"Maps"* on page 158.



### Memo

Creates new text memos.

For more information, refer to *"Memo"* on page 160.



### Messaging

Provides access to text and multimedia messaging (SMS and MMS).

For more information, refer to *"Creating and Sending Messages"* on page 103.



### Messenger

Allows you to bring groups of friends together into a simple group conversation. When you get a new conversation in Messenger, Google+ sends an update to your device.

For more information, refer to *"Messenger"* on page 127.



### Music Player

Launches the built-in Music player that allows you to play music files that you have stored on your phone or microSD card. You can also create playlists.

For more information, refer to *"Music Player"* on page 147.



### My Files

My Files allows you to manage your sounds, images, videos, bluetooth files, Android files, and other data in one convenient location. Files are stored to either the internal storage or memory card in separate (user defined) folders.

For more information, refer to *"My Files"* on page 162.



### Navigation

Navigation is an internet-connected GPS navigation system with voice guidance. You can type or speak your destination.

For more information, refer to *"Navigation"* on page 163.



### Phone

Provides the ability to make or answering calls, access the Contacts list, which is used to store contact information.

For more information, refer to *"Call Functions and Contacts List"* on page 51.



### Play Books

Provides access to read over 3 million ebooks on the go.

For more information, refer to *"Play Books"* on page 165.



### Play Magazines

With Google Play Magazines, you can subscribe to your favourite magazines and have them available to read on your phone at any time or any place.

For more information, refer to *"Play Magazines"* on page 166.



### Play Movies

Rent movies on Google Play™ and watch instantly using the Google Play Movies app.

For more information, refer to *"Play Movies"* on page 142.



### Play Music (Google Music)

While online you can play music that you have added to your music file as well as any music you copied from your PC. While offline, you can listen to music you have copied from your PC.

For more information, refer to *"Play Music"* on page 142.



### Play Store

The Play Store provides access to downloadable applications and games to install on your phone.

For more information, refer to *"Play Store"* on page 167.



### Polaris Office 4.0

Polaris® Office is a Microsoft Office compatible office suite. This application provides a central place for managing your documents online or offline. For more information, refer to *"Polaris Office 4.0"* on page 169.



### S Planner

With the S Planner application, you can consult the calendar by day, week, month, year, create events, and set an alarm to act as a reminder.

For more information, refer to *"S Planner"* on page 170.



### S Voice

With the S Voice application you can use your voice to perform operations that you would normally have to do by hand such as dialing a phone number, sending a text message, playing music, etc.

For more information, refer to *"Using S Voice"* on page 59.



### Samsung Apps

Allows you to easily download an abundance of applications to your device. This includes games, news, reference, social networking, navigation, and more.

For more information, refer to *"Samsung Apps"* on page 172.



### Settings

Accesses the device's built-in Settings menu.

For more information, refer to *"Changing Your Settings"* on page 196.



### Talk

Launches a Web-based Google Talk application that lets you chat and video conference with family and friends over the Internet for free.

For more information, refer to *"Talk"* on page 126.



### Video Hub

Provides a platform for downloading and viewing movies, TV shows and other media.

For more information, refer to *"Video Hub"* on page 173.



### Video Player

Launches your device's built-in video application that plays video files stored on your device or microSD card.

For more information, refer to *"Using the Video Player"* on page 141.



### Voice Recorder

Allows you to record an audio file up to one minute long and then immediately send it as a message.

For more information, refer to *"Voice Recorder"* on page 173.



### Voice Search

Launches the Google Now application that is used for voice to text Internet searching.

For more information, refer to *"Voice Search"* on page 174.



### YouTube

Launches the YouTube webpage via the browser.

For more information, refer to *"YouTube"* on page 150.

## Screen Navigation

Using the touch screen display and the keys, you can navigate the features of your device and enter characters. The following conventions are used in this manual to describe the navigation action in the procedures.

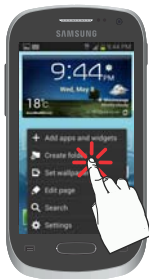
### *Navigating Through the Screens*

The following terms describe the most common hardware and on-screen actions.

Press and hold



Tap



Touch and hold



- **Press and hold:** Pressing relates to use of the hardware keys and buttons to select or activate an item. For example: press the Navigation key to scroll through a menu. Some buttons and keys require you to press and hold them to activate a feature, for example, you press and hold the Lock key to lock and unlock the phone.
- **Touch and hold:** Touch and hold a screen icon or key to open the available options, or to access a pop-up menu. For example: touch and hold the Home screen to access a menu of customization options.
- **Tap:** Use a brief touch to select items on the display or to enter text on the virtual QWERTY keyboard. For example: tap an Application icon to open the application. A light touch works best.
- **Flick:** Move your finger in light, quick strokes. This finger gesture is always used in a vertical motion, such as when flicking through contacts or a message list.
- **Swipe or slide:** Quickly drag your finger vertically or horizontally across the screen. This allows you to move the area of focus or to scroll through a list. For example: slide your finger left or right on the Home screen to scroll among the seven panels.

- **Drag:** Press and hold your finger with some pressure before you start to move it. Do not release your finger until you have reached the target position.
- **Rotate:** Automatically change the screen orientation from portrait to landscape by turning the device sideways. For example: rotate to landscape orientation when entering text, to provide a larger keyboard, or when viewing web content to minimize scrolling.



- **Pinch:** "Pinch" the screen using your thumb and forefinger to zoom out when viewing a picture or a Web page. (Move fingers inward to zoom out.)

- **Spread:** “Spread” the screen using your thumb and forefinger to zoom in when viewing a picture or a Web page. (Move fingers outward to zoom in.)



- **Motion Navigation and Activation:** The device is equipped with the ability to assign specific functions to certain phone actions that are detected by both the accelerometer and gyroscope.

---




**Note:** Motion must be enabled for this feature to be active. For more information, refer to “*Motion Settings*” on page 239.

---

## Using Gestures

By activating the various gesture features within the Motion menu (page 239), you can access a variety of time saving functions.

To activate motion:

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **Motion**.
2. Activate the feature by touching and sliding the **Motion** slider to the right to turn it on .
3. Tap the desired on-screen motion option.

The following is a description some of the most commonly used gestures:

- **Shake to update:** Once enabled, shake your device to rescan for Bluetooth devices, rescan for Wi-Fi devices, Refresh a Web page, etc.
- **Turn over to mute/pause:** Once enabled, mute incoming calls and any playing sounds by turning the device display down on a surface. This is the opposite of the Pickup to be Notified Gesture.

- **Tutorial:** provides access to advanced gesture settings and tutorials such as:
  - **Learn about motions:** tap an on-screen entry to display a brief tutorial on the use of the selected function.

---

**Note:** Motion settings are only accessible if the gesture feature is currently active.




---

## Menu Navigation

You can tailor the device's range of functions to fit your needs using both menus and applications. Menus, sub-menus, and features are accessed by scrolling through the available on-screen menus.

### *Navigating Through the Application Menus*


There are four default Application Menu screens available. As you add more applications from the Play Store, more screens are created to house these new apps.

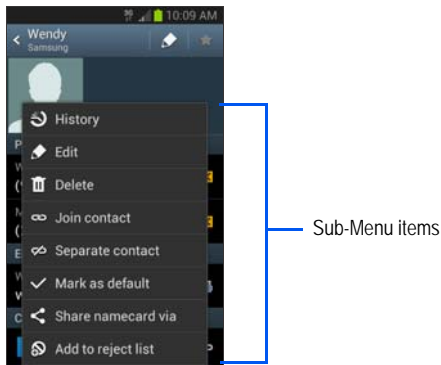
1. Press  and then tap  (**Apps**). The first Application Menu displays.
  - To close the Applications screen, press  (**Home**).
2. Sweep the screen to access the other menus.
3. Tap any of the on-screen icons to launch the associated application.



## Using Sub-Menus

Sub-menus are available from within most screen and applications.

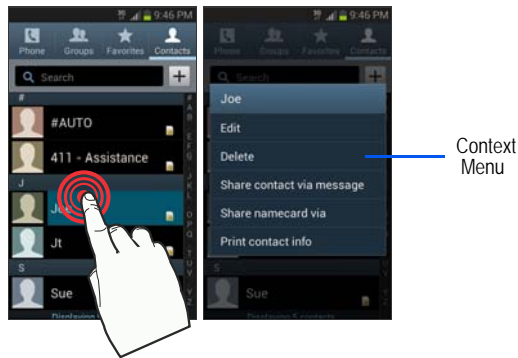
1. Press . A sub-menu displays at the bottom of the screen.
2. Tap an available on-screen option.




## Using Context Menus

Context menus (also called pop-up menus) contain options that apply to a specific item on the screen.

- Touch and hold an item on-screen to open its context menu.



## Accessing Recently-Used Applications

1. Press and hold  to open the recently-used applications window.

---

**Note:** This recent applications screen also provides access to the **Task manager**.

---

2. A pop-up displays the most recently used applications.
3. Tap an icon to open the recent application.

## Customizing the Screens

You can customize the Home screens (panels) to display Widgets, Shortcuts, Folders, or Wallpapers. For example, one screen can contain the Music Player shortcut and other forms of media, while another screen might contain communication apps such as Gmail.

You can customize your Home screen by doing the following:

- Adding, Deleting, and Rearranging screens
- Assigning a New Home screen
- Adding and Removing Primary Shortcuts
- Adjusting the Home Screen Mode
- Sharing Application Information
- Managing Shortcuts
- Adding and Removing Widgets
- Creating and Managing Folders
- Changing the Background (Wallpapers)

## Adding and Deleting Home Screens




Your phone comes with seven Home screens. You can rearrange these screens or delete them and then add them back later.

---




**Important!** Your device can have at most seven screens and must have at least one screen.

---


To delete a screen:

1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Edit page**.
2. Touch and hold the undesired screen, then drag it down to the **Remove** tab (  ).
3. Press  to return to the main Home screen.



To add a screen:

1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Edit page**.
2. Tap  (**Add screen**). The newly added screen appears as the last page.
3. Press  to return to the main Home screen.

## Rearranging the Screens

1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Edit page**.
2. Touch and hold a screen and then drag it into its new location. Upper-left is screen position #1 and bottom-right is the last screen.

## Assigning a New Default Home Screen

1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Edit page**.
2. Tap  on the upper right corner of the page you want to be the default Home screen. The icon turns blue




## Adding and Removing Primary Shortcuts

The device comes with four Primary shortcuts: Phone, Contacts, Messaging, and Internet.



As long as the Application menu is displayed in a **Customizable grid**, you can replace these shortcuts with other applications so you access the shortcuts that are most frequently used.

**To remove a primary shortcut:**

1. Press  to go to the Home screen.

2. Touch and hold the primary shortcut you want to replace, then drag it to an empty space on any available screen. The primary shortcuts are now updated to show an empty slot.



**To insert a new primary shortcut:**

1. Press  and then tap  (**Apps**).
2. Locate your desired application, then touch and hold the on-screen icon to position it on a Home screen.
3. In a single motion, touch and hold the new shortcut, then drag it to the empty space in the row of primary shortcuts. The new primary shortcut will now appear on both the Home and Extended screens.

## Adjusting the Home Screen Mode

This application allows you to change the Home screen mode and choose between Basic mode and Easy mode.




- **Basic mode:** displays screens, shortcuts, and widgets in their standard view (as seen on most Android devices).
- **Easy mode:** makes navigation easier by increasing the size of most application shortcuts, providing an entire page with large Contact entries, and creating other easy to access and view widgets. This mode is intended for first-time smartphone users.

1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings** →  (**Home screen mode**).
2. Tap the pull-down dropbox and select one of the following options:
  - **Basic mode**: provides conventional layout for the apps and widgets on your home screens.
  - **Easy mode**: provides easier user experience for first-time smartphone users on the home screens.
3. Tap **Apply** and give your device a few seconds to update the device with the new look and feel.

For more information, refer to *"Home Screen Mode"* on page 213.

### Sharing Application Information

The device's Applications menu now comes with a feature that allows you to share information about your selected applications with external users.

1. Press  and then tap  (**Apps**).
2. Press  and then tap **Share apps**.
3. Tap the applications you want to share information about to place a checkmark in the selection box then tap **Done**.

---

**Note:** Only applications that have been downloaded from the Play Store can be shared.

---

4. Select a sharing method. Choose from: Bluetooth, Email, Flipboard, Gmail, ChatON, Google, Google+, Memo, Messaging, or Wi-Fi Direct.
5. The recipient will be notified about the receipt of the new information.


### Managing Shortcuts


---

**Note:** To move a shortcut from one screen to another, touch and hold the shortcut and slowly drag it to the edge of the screen until it moves to the adjacent screen. You can also delete the shortcut from its current screen, open the new screen and then add the selected shortcut.


---

**To add a shortcut from the Applications screen:**


1. Press  to go to the Home screen.
2. Select a screen location for your new shortcut by scrolling across your available screens until you reach the desired one.


3. Tap **Apps** () to reveal all your current available applications. By default, applications are displayed as an Alphabetical grid.
4. Scroll across the screens and locate your desired application.
5. Touch and hold the on-screen icon. The new shortcut then appears to hover over the current screen.
6. While still holding the on-screen icon, position it on the current screen. Once complete, release the screen to lock the shortcut into its new position.

#### To add a shortcut via the Add to Home screen:

1. Press  to go to the Home screen.
2. Navigate to a screen with an empty area.
3. Touch and hold an empty area of the screen.
4. From the **Home screen** window, tap **Apps and widgets** → **Apps**.
5. Scroll up or down the list to find your desired app, then touch and hold the selection.

#### To delete a shortcut:



1. Press  to go to the Home screen.

2. Touch and hold the desired shortcut. This unlocks it from its location on the current screen.
3. Drag the shortcut over the **Remove** tab () and release it.


### *Adding and Removing Widgets*

Widgets are self-contained applications that can be placed on any screen. Unlike shortcuts, widgets appear as applications.

#### To add a Widget:

1. Press  and then tap  (**Apps**) → **Widgets** tab.
2. Scroll across the Widget pages and locate a desired Widget.
3. Touch and hold an available Widget until it detaches from the screen.
4. While still holding the Widget, scroll left or right across the available screens and let go of the Widget to place it on your current screen.

#### To remove a Widget:

1. Touch and hold a Widget until it unlocks from the current screen.
2. Drag the widget over the **Remove** tab () and release it.

- As you place the Widget into the Trash, both items turn red.
- This action doesn't delete the Widget, it just removes it from the current screen.


#### To place a widget onto a different screen:

1. Touch and hold the widget until it becomes transparent.
2. Slowly drag it past the edge of the screen until the adjacent page appears highlighted and it then snaps onto the new page.
3. Drag the widget to its desired position on the new screen.
4. Repeat these steps to continue moving it to other screens.

### *Creating and Managing a Folder*

Folders hold items that you want to organize and store together on the workspace.


#### To create a new on-screen folder:

1. Press  to go to the Home screen.
2. Touch and hold an empty area of the screen.
3. From the **Home** screen window, tap **Folder**.
4. Enter a new folder name and tap **OK**.

#### Renaming a folder

1. Tap the folder you want to rename. This opens its contents on an on-screen popup window.
2. Tap the folder title (top of the Folder window). The rename pop-up displays.
3. Erase the previous name, enter a new title for this folder, and then tap **Done**.

#### Deleting a folder

1. Touch and hold a desired folder. This unlocks it from its location on the current screen.
2. Drag the folder over the **Remove** tab (  ) and release it.

### *Managing Wallpapers*

Wallpapers can be selected from Gallery images (user taken), Live wallpapers (animated backgrounds), or Wallpaper gallery (default phone wallpapers).

---


**Note:** Selecting animated Live wallpapers will require additional battery power.

---

#### To change the current wallpaper:

1. Navigate to any screen.

– or –

Press  to go to the Home screen.


2. Touch and hold an empty area of the screen.
3. From the Home screen window tap **Set wallpaper** → Home screen.
4. Select a Wallpaper type:
  - Tap **Gallery** to select from a user image stored in the camera image gallery, crop the image, and tap **Done**.
  - Tap **Live wallpapers** to select from a list of animated backgrounds, once done tap **Set wallpaper**.
  - Tap **Wallpapers**, scroll through the images, tap a wallpaper image, then tap **Set wallpaper**.

---

**Note:** Wallpapers supports the following image types: JPEG, PNG, GIF, BMP, and WBMP.

---

**To change Wallpapers from Settings Menu:**

1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings** → **Display** → **Wallpaper**.
2. Access an available option. Choose from Home screen, Lock screen, or Home and lock screen.


---

**Note:** The Home and lock screens is an additional option that allows you to change both screens at the same time.

---

3. Select a wallpaper type (Gallery, Live wallpaper, or Wallpapers).
4. Choose an image and tap **Done** or **Set wallpaper**.

**To change the current Lock screen wallpaper:**

1. Navigate to any screen, touch and hold an empty area of the screen, and tap **Set wallpaper** → Lock screen.  
– or –  
From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings** → **Display** → **Wallpaper** → Lock screen.
2. Select a Wallpaper type:
  - Tap **Gallery** to select from a user image stored in the camera image gallery, crop the image, and tap **Done**.
  - Tap **Wallpaper**, scroll through the images, tap a wallpaper image, then tap **Set wallpaper**.

## Section 3: Memory Card

---

Your device accepts a microSD™ or microSDHC™ memory card to expand available memory space. This secure digital card enables you to exchange images, music, and data between SD-compatible devices.

- microSD card storage: up to 2GB in size
- SDHC card storage: up to 32GB in size

This section addresses the features and options of your device's SD functionality.

### SD card Overview

After mounting an SD card in the device you can use your computer to access and manage the SD card.

---

**Important!** If access to the external SD card is not available, download and install the USB drivers.

---

#### microSD Icon Indicators

The following icons show your microSD card connection status at a glance:



the card can be safely removed.



the card is being prepared for use and for mounting.



the card has been improperly removed.

---

**Important! DO NOT** remove a microSD card while the device is accessing or transferring files. Doing so will result in loss or damage of data. Make sure your battery is sufficiently charged before using the microSD card. Your data may become damaged or lost if the battery runs out while you are using the microSD card.

---



## Inserting the SD card


- Insert the SD card into the external, SD card slot.  
For more information, refer to *"Installing the microSD Memory Card"* on page 6.  
The card is automatically mounted (prepared for use).

## PC Communication with the SD card

1. Connect the USB cable to the phone and connect the cable to the computer.
2. Confirm the SD card appears as a new drive on your computer. As soon as the connection is established a drive letter is assigned to the device's storage device.
3. To disconnect the new drive, simply remove the USB cable from your device.

## Unmounting the SD card

Unmounting the SD card prevents corruption and damage to the SD card while removing it from the slot.


1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings → Storage**.
2. Tap **Unmount SD card → OK**.

3. After the **"SD card will be unmounted"** message displays and the **Mount SD card** now appears in the menu list, remove the SD card. For more information, refer to *"Removing the microSD Memory Card"* on page 7.

## Remounting an SD Card


SD cards must be mounted (installed) prior to use. Mounting the SD card establishes a connection with your device.

Cards are automatically mounted when inserted but must be remounted if unmounted for any reason.

1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings → Storage**.
2. Tap **Mount SD card**.

## SD card Memory Status

To view the memory allocation for your external SD card:

- From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings → Storage**.  
The available memory displays under both the Device memory and SD card headings.

## Erasing Files from the SD card

To erase all files from the SD card using the device:

1. Ensure the SD card is mounted.


2. Tap Format SD card → Format SD card → Erase **everything** to format the SD card. The SD card formats and erases all the data stored on it.

## Section 4: Call Functions and Contacts List




---

This section describes features and functionality associated with making or answering calls, and the Contacts list, which is used to store contact information.

### Displaying Your Phone Number

- From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings** → **About device** → **Status**. Your phone number displays in the **My phone number** field.

---


**Note:** The device's **Settings** menu can also be accessed by pressing  and then tapping  (**Apps**) →  (**Settings**).



---

### Making a Call

You can store phone numbers that are regularly used to the SIM card or to the phone's memory. These entries are referred to as the **Contacts list**.

1. Press  and then tap .

2. Enter the phone number and then tap .

- If you make a mistake while dialing, tap  to clear the last digit. Touch and hold  to clear the entire sequence.

---

**Note:** When you activate the **Auto redial** option in the **Call settings** → **Additional settings** menu, the device automatically redials up to 10 times when the person does not answer the call or is already on the phone, provided your call is not sent to voicemail.


---

---

**Note:** If your screen goes black during your interaction with the device (Launching Keypad, etc.), you might be accidentally covering the front sensors.


---

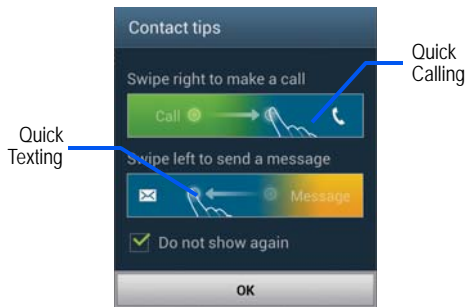
---

**Note:** To redial a recent number, tap  at the end of the call or locate the number from the Logs list, tap the entry and tap **Call**.

---

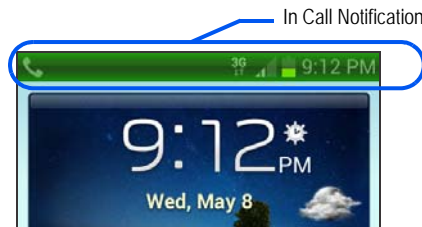
## Quick Dialing a Number from the Contacts List

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Contacts).
2. Locate a contact from the list.
3. In a single motion, touch and drag the number to the right. This action places a call to the recipient.



## Running a Call in the Background

If you exit the current call screen and return to the Home screen while on an active call, you are visually notified that you are still on an active call by the green phone icon in the Status bar. This lets stay on your current call and do something else (multi-task) such as access the Contacts list, view a recent email, locate a picture, etc.



## Ending a Call

- Briefly tap  key to end the call.

## Ending a Call from the Status Bar

1. Tap the Status bar to reveal the Notifications tab, and then drag the tab to the bottom of the screen to open the Notifications panel (1).
2. Tap **End** to end the currently active call (2).




## Making Emergency Calls

If you do not have a SIM card installed when you turn on the phone, the **Insert SIM card to make calls** message displays and an animated tutorial shows you how to install the SIM card.

Without a SIM card, you can only make an emergency call with the phone; normal cell phone service is not available.


### Making an Emergency Call without a SIM card installed

1. Tap **Emergency call** from the on-screen display to make an emergency call.
2. Enter 9-1-1 and tap . Complete your call. During this type of call, you will have access to the Speaker mode, Keypad, and End Call features.

---




**Note:** Selecting Location consent may drain battery power. For more information, refer to *“Power Saving Mode”* on page 217.

---

3. Tap  to exit this calling mode.

### Making an Emergency call with a SIM card installed




The Emergency calling mode makes redialing an emergency number a 1-tap process. Before you can resume normal calling operations, you should first exit this mode.

1. Swipe the Lock screen to unlock the device.
2. From the Home screen, tap .
3. Enter the emergency number (911) and then tap .
4. Complete your call. During this type of call, you will have access to the Speaker mode, Keypad, and End Call features.
  - After completing your emergency call,  appears in the Notification area until you exit the Emergency calling mode.

---

**Note:** This mode can drain your battery power more rapidly than a normal calling mode.




---

5. At the Emergency Callback screen:
  - Tap  to callback 911 with a single tap.
  - Touch and slide  to return to the Home screen while still remaining in the Emergency calling mode. This allows you to access other applications while staying in this mode.
  - Touch and slide  to the right to exit this mode.


## Dialing Options

When you access the Keypad, you will see three on-screen options.

From the keypad screen, use one of the following options:

- **Message** () to access the New Message screen.
- **Call** () to call the entered number.
- **Delete** () to delete digits from the current number.



To view additional dialing options:

- After entering a number, tap :
  - **Send message** to send the current caller a text message while still maintaining the current call active.
  - **Add to Contacts** to add the current number to either a new or existing Contacts entry.
  - **Speed dial setting** to access the Speed Dialing menu where you can assign a speed dial location to a current Contacts entry.
  - **Add 2-sec pause** to insert a two-second pause to enter a 2-second delay within a number string (the phone continues dialing after 2 seconds without any additional keys being pressed).

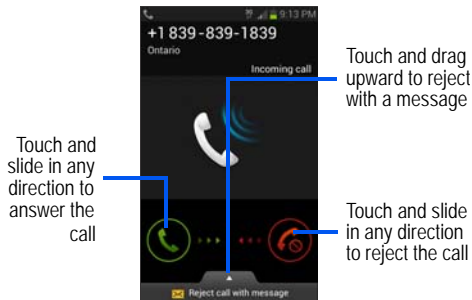
- **Add wait** to insert a hard pause within the number string (the phone waits for your input). A wait requires that any consecutive numbers be manually sent by tapping **Yes**.
- **Call settings** to provide you access to the Call settings screen.

## Answering a Call

When somebody calls you, the phone rings and displays the incoming call image. The caller's phone number displays, if available. You may also see the caller's name and picture, if stored in Contacts List.



- At the incoming call screen:
  - Touch and slide  in any direction to answer the call.
  - Touch and slide  in any direction to reject the call.
  - Touch and drag the **Reject call with message** tab upward and tap a predefined rejection message or tap **Create new message** to create a new custom outgoing response.

Pressing the Volume down button mutes the ringer.



## Managing Reject Calls

This feature allows you to categorize both known and unknown callers as rejected contacts. These Contacts are then added to your Rejection List, which can be managed for individual entries from within the Contacts list or as a whole from the Call rejection screen.


1. From the Home screen, tap .
2. Press  and then tap **Call settings** → **Call rejection**.


3. In a single motion touch and slide the **Auto reject mode** slider to the right to turn it on. The slider turns green to indicate activation of the Auto reject mode.
  - Move the slider left to disable the automatic rejection feature. You must then manually reject incoming phone calls.
4. Tap the **Auto reject mode** field to configure your automatic rejection settings. Rejected calls are routed automatically to your voicemail. Choose from:
  - **All numbers:** enables the features for all known and unknown numbers, including those contacts that are not assigned to the rejection list.
  - **Auto reject numbers:** automatically rejects all entries assigned to the Reject list/Blacklist.

### *Adding numbers to the rejection list*




Entries can be added to the list via either the Contacts menu or via the Auto reject list menu. The Contacts menu option assigns all numbers for an individual as rejected. The Auto reject list allows to assign individual numbers.

To assign multiple numbers as rejected via Contacts:






1. From the Home screen, tap  (Contacts).

2. Locate an entry and tap it to open the Contact Overview Screen.
3. Press  and then tap **Add to reject list**. All phone numbers associated with this entry are then added to the reject list.

To assign single number as rejected via Auto reject list:

1. From the Home screen, tap .
2. Press  and then tap **Call settings** → **Call rejection** → **Auto reject list**.
3. Tap  (Create) and either enter the phone number or select a Contact from your Logs or Contacts list.
4. Tap **Save** to complete the assignment.


### International Calls

1. From the Home screen, tap  and then touch and hold  until the device shows "+" on-screen.
2. Use the on-screen keypad to enter the country code, area code, and phone number.
3. If you make a mistake, tap  once to delete a single digit.
4. Touch and hold  to delete all digits.
5. Tap .





## Pause Dialing

You can dial or save phone numbers with pauses for use with automated systems, such as voicemail or banking.

- **2-Second Pause** automatically sends the next set of numbers after a two-second pause. This is indicated in the number string as a comma (,).
- **Wait** sends the next set of numbers only after tapping . This is indicated in the number string as a semicolon (;).

### Add pause

1. From the Home screen, tap  and use the on-screen keypad to enter the phone number.
2. Press  and then tap **Add 2-sec pause** to add an automatic two-second pause or **Add wait** to add a wait pause.
3. Use the keypad to enter the additional numbers that will be dialed automatically after the second pause.

---





**Tip:** You can create pauses longer than two seconds by entering multiple 2-sec pauses.

---

4. Tap .

### Add wait



Inserting a Wait into your dialing sequence means that the phone waits until you tap a key before proceeding with the next sequence of numbers.

1. From the Home screen, tap  and use the on-screen keypad to enter the phone number.
2. Press  and then tap **Add wait**. This feature causes the phone to require your acceptance before sending the next set of entered digits.
3. Tap .
4. Once prompted to **Send the following tones?**, tap  to dial the remaining digits.

## Redialing the Last Number

The device stores the numbers of the calls you've dialed, received, or missed if the caller is identified.

To recall any of these numbers:

1. From the Home screen, tap .
2. Tap the **Logs** tab to display the list of recent calls.
3. Tap the name/number and tap .

## Speed Dialing

Once you have stored phone numbers from your Contacts List, you can set up to 8 speed dial entries (2-9) and then dial them easily whenever you want, simply by touching the associated numeric key.

---

**Note:** Speed dial location #1 is reserved for Voicemail use.



---

### *Setting Up Speed Dial Entries*



---

**Important!** The number 1 is reserved for Voicemail and another number cannot be assigned to this slot.

---

1. From the Home screen, tap .
2. Press  and then tap **Speed dial setting**. The **Speed dial setting** screen displays a virtual list of locations with the numbers 2 through 9.
3. Tap an unassigned number slot. The **Select contact** screen displays.
4. Tap a contact and select a number to assign it to the speed dial location. The selected contact number/image is displayed in the speed dial number box.


### *Changing a Speed Dial Entry Order*

1. From the Home screen, tap .
2. Press  and then tap **Speed dial setting**.

---

**Important!** The number 1 is reserved for Voicemail and another number cannot be assigned to this slot.

---

3. Press  and then tap **Change order**.
4. Tap the current entry then tap the new target speed dial location.





---

**Note:** Tapping two existing speed dial locations causes the entries to switch positions.

---




5. Tap **Done** to apply your change and return to the previous screen.

## Removing a Speed Dial Entry

1. From the Home screen, tap .
2. Press  and then tap **Speed dial setting**.
3. Touch and hold a existing on-screen speed dial location and select **Remove** from the context menu.  
– or –  
Press  and then tap **Remove**. Tap an entry to place a checkmark in the selection box then tap **Done** (to complete the deletion) or **Cancel** (to exit).
4. Press  to return to the previous screen.

## Making a Call Using Speed Dial



To speed dial a phone number:

1. From the Home screen, tap .
2. Touch and hold a previously created speed dial location (numbers 2-9, or 1 if you are dialing voicemail) until the number begins to dial.
  - If you are not certain of the speed dial location, tap  →  → **Speed dial setting** and tap a speed dial number to view the assigned phone number.

## Using S Voice

S Voice is a natural language voice recognition application used to activate a wide variety of functions on your device.


This goes beyond the Google Search Voice Actions feature that simply recognizes Google commands and search terms. You can ask it questions (Is it raining in Dallas?) or give it commands (Show me where to find cheap gas).

1. From the Home screen, tap  (**Apps**) →  (**S Voice**).
2. Review the Samsung Agreement and tap **Confirm** to continue.
3. Review the Terms of service and tap **Agree** to continue.
4. Navigate through the following on-screen tutorial screens by reading the information and tapping **Next**, or tap **Skip** to continue without reading the information.
5. Wake up the application by repeating the phrase “Hi Galaxy”.

---

**Note:** The wake-up command/phrase can be changed from “Hi Galaxy” to anything else.

---

6. Tap  (Speak) if the device does not hear you or to give it a command.

Example 1: You want to find the best pizza online.

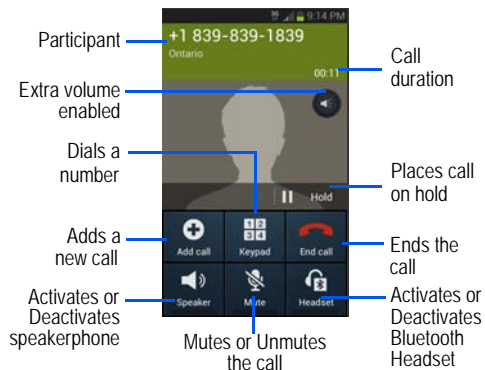
- Say "Hi Galaxy" or tap  and say "Find me the best Pizza". This launches an Internet search.
- If prompted, select the desired Browser.

Example 2: You want to go to Cambridge.

- Say "Hi Galaxy" or tap  and say "Navigate to Cambridge". This launches the Map application and indicates where these are in relation to your current position.

## In Call Options

Your phone provides a number of features that are available for use during a call.



## Adjusting the Call Volume

During a call, use the Volume keys on the left side of the phone to adjust the earpiece volume.

- Press the **Up** volume key to increase the volume level and the **Down** volume key to decrease the level.

You can also tap the on-screen **Extra volume** button to increase the call volume even more than the maximum available using the volume keys.

- This function is enabled/disabled via the Call settings menu (**Call settings** → **Extra volume on calls**). For more information, refer to *"Configuring General Call Settings"* on page 207.

From the Home screen, you can also adjust the ring volume using these keys.


## Placing a Call on Hold

You can place the current call on hold whenever you want. If your network supports this service, you can also make another call while a call is in progress.

**To place a call on hold:**

1. Tap **Hold** to place the current call on hold.
2. Tap **Unhold** to activate the call that is on hold.

**To make a new call while a call is in progress:**

1. Enter the new phone number that you wish to dial or look it up in Call history.
2. Tap **Add call** to dial the second call.
3. Dial the new phone number and tap 

**To switch between the two calls:**



- Tap **Swap**.

The previous In call number turns gray and displays On hold.

The new active call displays a green background behind the number.

## Turning the Speakerphone on and off

While on a call, you can use your Speakerphone by following these steps:



1. Tap  (Speaker off) to toggle the speakerphone on.
2. Tap  (Speaker on) to toggle the speakerphone off.

---



**Tip:** When the speaker is turned **On**, the color of the speaker is green. When the speaker is turned **Off**, the color of the speaker is gray.

---

## Muting a Call

1. Tap  (Mute off) to turn mute on so the other caller cannot hear you speaking.
2. Tap  (Mute on) to turn mute off and resume your conversation.

## Switching to Bluetooth Headset



1. Pair the target Bluetooth headset prior to your call.
2. While on a call, switch to the Bluetooth headset instead of speaker by tapping  (Headset off).
3. At the prompt, tap **OK** to enable Bluetooth if it is not already activated.
4. While on a call, switch back to the device speaker by tapping  (Headset on).

## More In-call Options

During a call you can save the current caller's information to the Contacts list, or create a Message or Memo.




### Viewing the Contacts List

During a call you can look up a number in the Contacts list.

1. Press  and then tap **Contacts**.
2. Browse the Contacts list for the information you need.
3. Press  to return to the active call.



## Creating a Message During a Call

During a call you can create a message.

1. Press  and then tap **Message** →  (Compose).
2. Address and create the message.
3. Review your message and tap  (Send).

## Creating a Memo During a Call

During a call it may be necessary to record information (a Note).

1. Press  and then tap **Memo**.
2. Use the on-screen keyboard to enter the note then tap **Save**.
  - If desired, press  and select a new memo background color before saving.




## Multi-Party calls

### Making a Multi-Party Call

A multi-party call is a network service that allows multiple people to participate in a multi-party or conference call.

For further details about this service, contact customer service.

### Setting up a Multi-Party Call

1. From the Home screen, tap .
2. Dial the number for the first participant and tap .
3. Tap **Add call**, enter the second phone number and tap . The first caller is placed on hold.
4. Wait for the second caller to answer the incoming call and tap **Merge**. The two calls are now joined into a multi-party call and display in the order in which they were called.



---

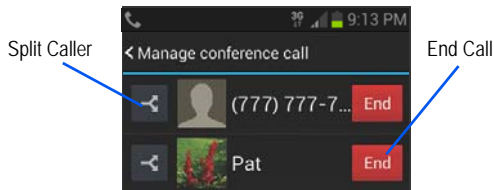
**Important!** A maximum of two callers can be joined to a single multi-party line. Additional callers participate in a new Multiparty session and are held in conjunction with the previous multiparty call. You can swap or place each multi-party call on hold.

---

## Having a Private Conversation With One Participant

When you have two participants in a multi-party session, it might be necessary to place one of those participants on hold so that a private conversation can be held with a single caller. While you are in a multi-party call:




1. Press  and then tap **Manage conference call**.
2. Tap  adjacent to the participants you would like to split from the current multi-line call. The list displays the callers in the order they were dialed.



3. Tap the participant to which you want to speak privately. You can now talk privately to that person while the other participants can continue to converse with each other. If there is only one other participant, that person is placed on hold.

4. To return to the multi-party call, tap the **Merge** icon. All of the multi-party call participants can now hear each other.

## Dropping One Participant


1. Press  and then tap **Manage conference call** → . The participant is disconnected and you can continue the call with the other participant.
2. Tap  to end your conversation with the remaining caller.

## Call Waiting

You can answer an incoming call while you have a call in progress, if this service is supported by the network and you have previously set the Call waiting option to **Activate**.

You are notified of an incoming call by a call waiting tone. For more information, refer to *"Configuring Additional Voice Call Settings"* on page 211.

**To answer a new call while you have a call in progress:**

1. In a single motion, touch  and slide it in any direction to answer the new incoming call.
2. Tap an option from the on-screen menu:



- **Putting xxx on hold** to place the previous caller on hold while you answer the new incoming call.
- **Ending call with xxx** to end the previous call and answer the new call.

---

**Note:** The new caller appears at the top of the list. The previous caller is placed on hold and appears at the bottom of the list.

---

3. Tap **Swap** to switch between the two calls. This places the new caller on hold and activates the previous call.

---

**Important!** The currently active call is displayed with a green background.

---

4. Tap **Swap** again to switch back.

## Logs Tab

The Logs tab is a list of the phone numbers (or Contacts entries) for calls you placed, accepted, or missed. The Logs tab makes redialing a number fast and easy. It is continually updated as your device automatically adds new numbers to the beginning of the list and removes the oldest entries from the bottom of the list.

The Notification area of the Home screen (upper-left) displays phone notifications, status, or alerts such as:



Displays when a call is in progress.



Displays when a call was missed.

## Accessing the Logs Tab

1. From the Home screen, tap  →  (Logs tab).
2. Tap an entry to view available options.

---

**Note:** The Logs tab only records calls that occur while the phone is turned on. If a call is received while it is turned off, it will not be included in your calling history.

---

Each entry contains the phone number (if it is available) and Contacts entry name (if the number is in your Contacts).



Indicates all outgoing calls made from your device.



Indicates any received calls that were answered.



Indicates a missed call.




Indicates any received calls that were rejected.



Indicates auto rejected calls.

### Accessing Call log from The Notifications Area

1. Locate  from the Notifications area of the Status bar.
2. Tap the Status bar to reveal the Notifications tab, and then drag the tab to the bottom of the screen to open the Notifications panel (1).

3. Tap the Missed call entry to open the Logs screen (2).



This list provides easy access to redial an entry, or you can also choose to access two types of history entry lists depending on how they are touched.

### Call logs - Caller Overview



- Tap a contact entry name or number to reveal the **Call options** screen:
  - **Create contact** to save the number if it is not already in your Contacts.
  - **View contact** to view the Contact details for the current entry.

- **Update existing** to update an existing Contacts entry with the current number.
- **Call** allows you to redial the entry by name or number.
- **Send message** allows you to create a new text message to the selected entry.
- **Time** provides the time and date of the call and its duration.
- **Copy to dialing screen** press  to pass the current number to your dialer and then edit the selected number before you place your next outbound call.
- **Delete** press  to delete the Contacts entry.
- **Send number** press  to send the current Contacts entry information to an external recipient.
- **Add to reject list** press  to add the current phone number to an automatic rejection list. Similar to a block list, the selected caller will be blocked from making an incoming calls to your phone.
- Touch and hold an entry to display the entry-specific context menu:
  - **Delete** to delete the entry from the Logs list.




## Erasing the Call Log List

You can delete either an individual call log entry or all current entries from the Call log list.

To clear a single entry from the list:


1. From the Home screen, tap  → .
2. Touch and hold an entry and select **Delete** → **Delete**.

To clear all entries from the list:

1. From the Home screen, tap  → .
2. Press  and then tap **Delete**.
3. Tap **Select all** → **Delete** → **Delete**.

## Viewing Missed Calls from Lock Screen

When you are unable to answer a call for any reason and your screen is locked, the number of missed calls are displayed on the Lock screen immediately after a call is missed.

1. Press  (**Power/End**) to reactivate the screen.
2. Touch and drag the button (with the number of missed calls on it) anywhere on the screen. The Logs tab is then displayed.

## Section 5: Entering Text

---

This section describes how to select the desired text input method when entering characters into your phone. This section also describes the predictive text entry system that reduces the amount of key strokes associated with entering text.

Your device comes equipped with an orientation detector that can tell if the phone is being held in an upright (Portrait) or sideways (Landscape) orientation. This is useful when entering text.

Your device also provides several on-screen keypad text entry options to make the task of text entry that much easier.

### Text Input Methods

There are three text input methods available:


- **Google voice typing:** provides a voice to text interface.
- **Samsung keyboard:** an on-screen QWERTY keyboard that can be used in both portrait and landscape orientation.
- **Swype (default):** is enabled so as you can enter text as you swipe across the on-screen keyboard. Instead of tapping each key, use your finger to trace over each letter of a word.

The on-screen QWERTY keypad works the same in both portrait and landscape mode.


### Selecting the Text Input Method

The Text Input Method can be assigned from within one of two locations:

**Settings Menu:**

- From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings → Language and input → Default** and select an input method.

**Text Input field:**

1. From a screen where you can enter text, in a single motion, touch and drag the Status bar down to the bottom of the screen to reveal the Notification screen.
2. Tap  (**Choose input method**) and select an available input method.

## Entering Text Using Swype


Swype™ is the default text input method that allows you to enter a word by sliding your finger or stylus from letter to letter, lifting your finger between words. SWYPE uses error correcting algorithms and a language model to predict the next word. SWYPE also includes a touch predictive text system.

The on-screen keyboard options are different between the Android keyboard and Swype on-screen input methods.

### Enabling and Configuring SWYPE

If you configure another text input method (Samsung keypad) you must re-enable SWYPE before using the SWYPE keyboard.

When SWYPE is enabled there can also be normal keyboard functionality.

1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings → Language and input**.
2. Tap **Default → Swype**.



---

**Note:** During its initial use, you may be prompted by a series of Swype Connect set up screens. Follow the initial on-screen set up instructions.

---

## Swype Settings

To configure Swype settings:

1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings → Language and input → ** (adjacent to the **Swype** field).
2. Tap **How to Swype** to view an on-screen manual for Swype.
3. Tap **Gestures** to view an on-screen reference page related to Gesture usage.
4. Tap **Preferences** to alter these settings:
  - **Vibrate on keypress:** activates a vibration sensation as you enter text using the keypad.
  - **Sound on keypress:** turns on sounds generated by the Swype application.
  - **Show helpful tips:** turns on a flashing indicator for quick help.
  - **Auto-spacing:** automatically inserts a space between words. When you finish a word, just lift your finger or stylus and start the next word.
  - **Auto-capitalization:** automatically capitalizes the first letter of a sentence.

- **Show complete trace:** once enabled, sets whether or not to display the complete Swype path.
- **Pop-up on keypress:** once enabled, displays a character above an on-screen key while typing.
- **Next word prediction:** once enabled, predicts the next word in your text string based on your current text entries.

---

**Note:** If incorrect words are being entered as you type, disabled this feature.

---

- **Reset Swype's dictionary:** once enabled, deletes any words you have added to Swype's dictionary.
  - **Version:** displays the software version information.
5. Tap **Language Options** to activate and select the current text input language. Default language is US English.
- **Living language:** allows you to automatically update Swype with popular new words. Tap **Accept** to continue the process

---

**Note:** To use Swype Connect, you must have an active data connection available (network or Wi-Fi).

---

6. Tap **Swype Connect** to activate social media personalization and configure data settings.
- **Register now:** allows you register for the Swype Connect service which allows you to backup your Swype dictionary and sync your Swype dictionary across multiple devices.
    - Follow the on-screen instructions to backup and sync your dictionary based on an email address.
    - Enter the activation code received after your email has been confirmed.
  - **Backup & Sync:** when active, allows you to backup your Swype dictionary and sync your Swype dictionary across multiple devices.
  - **Contribute usage data:** when enabled, allows the Nuance<sup>®</sup> application to collect usage data for better word predictions.
  - **Cellular data:** when enabled, activates cellular data usage by the Swype application so it can receive program updates, language downloads, and other related features via your existing data connection.



7. Tap **Personalization** to access and manage your personal dictionary. Log into the available accounts to add help personalize your personal dictionary with commonly used words or names from your available accounts.
  - **Edit Dictionary:** allows you to edit your current personal Swype dictionary.
  - **Facebook:** allows you to log into your current Facebook account from where contact names are added to your Swype's personal dictionary for later use when you enter names into text fields. Helps recognize familiar names.
  - **Twitter:** allows you to sign into your existing Twitter account from where names and words are added to your personal dictionary. Helps recognize familiar names and words.
  - **Gmail:** allows you to sign in to your existing Gmail account from where existing contact information is added to your personal dictionary. Helps recognize familiar names.
8. Tap **Updates** to update the application if new software is available.

### *Swype Text Entry Tips*



You can access the SwypeTips application and watch a video or tutorial on using Swype. You can also use the following Swype text entry tips.

- Create a squiggle (like an S shape) to create a double letter (such as **pp** in apple).
- Touch and hold a key to view the punctuation menu then make a selection.
- Move your finger or stylus over the apostrophe to enter contractions.
- Double-touch on the word you want to change to correct a misspelled word, then touch the delete key to erase one character. Touch and hold the delete key to erase an entire word.

## Selecting a Text Input Mode in Swype

1. From a screen where you can enter text, tap the text input field to reveal the on-screen keyboard.
2. With Swype as your text entry method, select one of the following text mode options:
  - **123 ABC**  to use Swype with alphanumeric characters from the on-screen keyboard.
  - **SYM (Symbol)**  to enter numbers and symbols from the on-screen keyboard.

---

**Note:** After typing an initial uppercase character, the  key changes to  and all letters that follow are in lower case.

---


## Swype Keyboard Overview



- **Recipients:** a field where you can enter the recipients of the current message. You can choose from **Groups**, **Favorites**, **Contacts**, or **Logs**.
- **Text Input field:** a field where text, number, or other characters can be entered.
- **CAPS/ALT key:** When in 123ABC mode, this key changes the capitalization of the subsequent entered characters. When in SYM mode, this key can show additional symbol characters.
- **SWYPE settings:** Touch and hold this button to access the Swype settings screen.
- **Text Input mode:** There are two available modes: **123ABC** and **SYM**.
  - 123ABC mode contains alphanumeric characters and a few common punctuation marks. Text mode button indicates **SYM**.
  - SYM mode contains only symbols and numbers. Text mode button indicates **123ABC**.







## Using 123ABC Mode in Swype




In 123ABC mode, you can enter only letters and a few common punctuation marks from the on-screen keyboard. The text mode key shows .

1. From a screen where you can enter text, tap the text input field to reveal the on-screen keyboard.
2. Tap  to configure the keyboard for 123ABC mode (showing letters and numbers on the on-screen keys). Once in this mode, the text input type shows .

---

**Note:** After typing an initial uppercase character, the  key changes to  and all letters that follow are in lower case.

---

3. Swipe your finger continuously over the letters to form a word.
  - If you make a mistake, tap  to erase a single character. Touch and hold  to erase an entire word.
4. Tap  (Send) to deliver the message.



### All lowercase

Displays when the next character is entered in lowercase. Pressing this while in 123SYM mode, reveals additional numeric-symbols keys.



### Initial Uppercase

Displays when the first character of each word is entered as uppercase but all subsequent characters are lowercase.



### All Uppercase

Displays when all characters will be entered as uppercase characters.

By default, the first letter of an entry is capitalized and the following letters are lower case. After a word is entered and you lift your finger, the cursor automatically adds a space after the word.


---




**Note:** If multiple word choices exist for your Swype entry, an on-screen popup appears to provide additional word choices.

---



## Entering Numbers and Symbols in SWYPE

By using the on-screen keyboard in portrait mode, some symbols are not available (such as Emoticons or Smileys). In SYM mode using Swype, you can only enter symbols and numbers from the on-screen keyboard.

Once in SYM mode, the text mode key shows .

1. From a screen where you can enter text, tap the text input field to reveal the on-screen keyboard.
2. Tap  to configure the keyboard for SYM mode. Once in this mode, the text input type shows .
3. Tap the on-screen key for the number or symbol you want to enter.
4. Touch and hold an on-screen key to enter the secondary symbol (above the main one on the same key).
5. Tap  to choose from additional symbols.

For example:

- To enter ®: tap  →  and select the ® key.

## Using the Samsung Keyboard


This QWERTY keypad can be used to enter text in either a Portrait or landscape orientation. The only difference between the two orientations are the sizes of the keys.

From a screen where you enter text, rotate your phone counter-clockwise to a landscape orientation. The on-screen QWERTY keypad displays.


### The Samsung Keyboard

This device has a built-in, QWERTY keypad (portrait mode) or keyboard (landscape mode). Using the QWERTY keypad/keyboard, you can type letter, numbers, punctuation, and other characters.

To use the Samsung keypad you must first configure the settings to default to the Samsung keypad.

1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings** → **Language and input** → **Default** → **Samsung keyboard**.

– or –

From a screen where you can enter text, in a single motion, touch and drag the Status bar down to the bottom of the screen, then select  (Choose input method) → **Samsung keyboard**.


2. The virtual keyboard is then assigned to the Samsung keyboard configuration for all subsequent text input.






## Entering Text using Different Input Options

Although the default text input method with the Samsung keyboard is to use the on-screen keys you have other options.






---

**Note:** If you do not see the **Voice typing input method** button, touch and hold the Input Methods/Settings icon then select .


---

1. From within an active message, tap the text input field to reveal the on-screen keyboard.
2. Tap →  (Input Methods) →  to use the default Voice typing input method to convert your spoken words to on-screen text.  
– or –  
Touch and hold  to select from other input methods such as:
  - **Clipboard** to launch the device's clipboard area from where you can select a current clipboard item to place in your current message.
  - **Settings** to access the Samsung keyboard settings menu.

## Changing the Text Input Mode in Keyboard

1. From a screen where you can enter text, tap the text input field to reveal the on-screen keyboard.
2. With Samsung keypad as your text entry method, select one of the following text mode options:
  - **Abc**  : to use alphabetic characters from the on-screen keyboard. In this mode, the text mode button displays .
  - **Symbol/Numeric**  : to enter numbers by pressing the numbers selecting them on the on-screen keyboard. In this mode, the text mode button displays  .  
There are up to 3 available pages of numeric symbols available by tapping .

---

**Note:** After typing an initial uppercase character, tap  to toggle capitalization.

---



### All lowercase

Displays when the next character is entered in lowercase.



### Initial Uppercase

Displays when the first character of each word is entered as uppercase but all subsequent characters are lowercase.





### All Uppercase



Displays when all characters will be entered as uppercase characters.

By default, the first letter of a new entry is capitalized and the following letters are lowercase. After a character is entered, the cursor automatically advances to the next space.




## Using ABC Mode in Samsung Keyboard

1. From a screen where you can enter text, tap the text input field to reveal the on-screen keyboard.
2. Tap  to configure the keyboard for ABC mode. Once in this mode, the text input type shows .


---




**Note:** After typing an initial uppercase character, the  key changes to  and all letters that follow are in lower case.

---



3. Enter your text using the on-screen keyboard.
  - If you make a mistake, tap  to erase a single character. Touch and hold  to erase an entire word.
4. Tap  (Send) to deliver the message.

## Using Symbol/Numeric Mode




Use the Symbol/Numeric Mode to add numbers, symbols, or emoticons. While in this mode, the text mode key displays .

1. From a screen where you can enter text, tap the text input field to reveal the on-screen keyboard. Rotate the phone counterclockwise to a landscape orientation, if desired.
2. Tap  to configure the keyboard for Symbol mode. Once in this mode, the text input type shows .
3. Tap a number, symbol, or emoticon character.
4. Tap  to return to ABC mode.

To enter symbols:

1. Tap  to configure the keyboard for Symbol mode.
2. Tap the appropriate symbol key.  
– or –  
Tap  button to cycle through additional pages.
  - The first number on this key indicates which page (1, 2, or 3) of additional characters is active.



## Samsung Keyboard Settings

1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings** → **Language and input** →  (adjacent to the Samsung keyboard field).  
– or –  
From within an active text entry screen, tap  from the bottom of the screen to reveal the **Samsung keyboard settings** screen.
2. Set any of the following options:
  - **Portrait keyboard types** allows you to choose a keyboard configuration (Qwerty keyboard [default] or 3x4 keyboard).
  - **Input languages** sets the input language. Tap a language from the available list. The keyboard is updated to the selected language.
  - **Predictive text** enables predictive text entry mode. This must be enabled to gain access to the advanced settings. Touch and hold to access the advanced settings.
  - **Continuous input** like using Swipe, allows you to enter text by sliding your fingers across the on-screen keys. This feature is optimized for use with the on-screen QWERTY keyboard.


- **Keyboard swipe:** swipe keyboard horizontally to switch between letters and symbols.
- **Voice input:** show voice entry button on keyboard.
- **Auto capitalization** automatically capitalizes the first letter of the first word in each sentence (standard English style).
- **Auto spacing** automatically inserts spaces between words.
- **Auto-punctuate** automatically inserts a full stop in a sentence by tapping the space bar twice when using the on-screen QWERTY keyboard.
- **Character preview** provides an automatic preview of the current character selection within the text string. This is helpful when multiple characters are available within one key.
- **Key-tap sound** enables auditory feedback when you tap an on-screen key.
- **Tutorial** launches a brief on-screen tutorial covering the main concepts related to the Samsung keyboard.
- **Reset settings** resets the keyboard settings back to their original configuration.


## Using Predictive Text

Predictive text is a system that has next-letter prediction and regional error correction, which compensates for users pressing the wrong keys on QWERTY keyboards.

1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings** → **Language and input** →  (adjacent to the **Samsung keyboard** field).

– or –

From within an active text entry screen, tap  to reveal the **Samsung keyboard settings** screen.

2. In a single motion touch and slide the **Predictive text** slider to the right to turn it on .
3. Tap the **Predictive text** field and configure any of the following advanced options:
  - **Personalized data** activate this feature to use the personal language data that you have entered and selected to make your text entry prediction results better. By enabling this feature you can choose from the following personalization features:
  - **Learn from Gmail** allows you to sign in to your existing Gmail account and add used text to your personal dictionary.





- **Learn from Facebook** allows you to log into your current Facebook account and add used text to your personal dictionary.
  - **Learn from Twitter** allows you to sign into your existing Twitter account and add used text to your personal dictionary.
  - **Learn from Messaging** allows your device to learn your messaging style by using your Messaging information.
  - **Learn from Contacts** updates predictive style by learning your Contacts style.
  - **Clear personalized data** removes all personalized data entered by the user.
4. Press  to return to the previous screen.

## Using the Google Voice Typing

This feature uses Google voice recognition to convert your spoken words into on-screen text.

You can use your voice to enter text using the Google Voice typing feature.

You can use your voice to enter text using the Google Voice typing feature.

1. From the keyboard, touch the top of the screen and drag it down to display your notification panel.
2. Tap  (Choose input method) → Google voice typing.
3. At the Listening prompt  (Speak now), speak clearly and distinctly into the microphone.  
The text is displayed in the message as you are speaking.
4. Tap  (Done) when you are finished.  
– or –  
Tap  (Resume) to resume recognition.


---

**Note:** The feature works best when you break your message down into smaller segments.


---




## Configure Google Voice Typing


1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings → Language and input**.

– or –

From a screen where you can enter text, in a single motion, touch and drag the Status bar down to the bottom of the screen, then select  (**Choose input method**) → **Set up input methods**.

2. Tap  (adjacent to the **Google voice typing** field).
3. Select a language by tapping **Choose input languages** area.
4. Remove the check mark from the **Automatic** field. This allows you to select additional languages.
5. Select the desired languages.
6. Activate **Block offensive words** to block recognition of known offensive words or language. (A green check mark indicates the feature is active).
7. Tap **Download offline speech recognition** to enable speech recognition via locally stored files so that even if you are not connected to a network you can still use the service.

## Using Google Voice Typing

1. From a screen where you can enter text, in a single motion, touch and drag the Status bar down to the bottom of the screen, then select  (**Choose input method**) → **Google voice typing**.
2. Speak into the device's microphone and watch your text being entered on-screen.
3. If the text is incorrect, tap **DELETE**.
4. Once you have completed entering your message, tap the message field or repeat the process to enter new voice to text words.

## Section 6: Contacts


---

This section explains how to use and manage your Contacts List. You can save phone numbers to your phone's memory.



### Accounts

From the Accounts menu you decide if you want applications to synchronize, send, and receive data at any given time, or if you want the applications to synchronize automatically. After determining how you want the accounts to synchronize, indicate which account to synchronize with your Contacts list.

To add an account:

1. Sign in to your Google account.
2. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings** → **Add account**.

– or –

From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Settings) → **Add account**.

3. Tap an account type to add.
4. Follow the on-screen instructions. The selected account type synchronizes with your Contacts list.

### Contacts List

#### *Creating a Contact*

The default storage location for saving phone numbers to your Contacts List is your device's built-in memory.

If existing Google and Corporate email accounts have been synchronized to your phone, these will be made available to your device during the creation of new entries. These new Contacts entries can be assigned or saved to synced accounts such as Phone, SIM, Google, or Corporate.

Your device automatically sorts the Contacts entries alphabetically. You can create either a **Phone**, **S M**, **Google**, **Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync**, or **Samsung** account contact.

---

**Note:** Before you can save a contact to the Phone, Contact settings must be set to **Save new contacts to Phone**.

---

---

**Important!** The Google and Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync account types are only visible after creating an email account of those types on your phone.

---

- **Phone** contacts are stored locally on the device.

---

**Note:** If the phone is ever reset to its factory default parameters, contacts stored on the phone can be lost.

---

- **SIM** contacts are stored in the SIM Card.

---

**Note:** SIM contacts only store the Name and Phone number for an entry.

---


- **Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync** contacts are intended to be shared with either an Exchange Server or from within Microsoft® Outlook®.
- **Add new account** lets you create a new account type. Choose from Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync, Samsung account, or Google.

---


**Note:** When storing an entry into your SIM card, note that only the Name, and Number are saved. To save additional information for a particular contact, such as notes, email, dates, etc., it is important to save that Contact into your phone's on-board memory.

---


1. From the Home screen, tap  (Contacts).

2. Tap  to create a contact.

---

**Note:** You can also add a new contact by entering a number from the keypad and pressing  and then tap **Add to Contacts** → **Create contact**. Continue with step 3.




---

3. Tap a destination type (**Phone**, **SIM**, **Google**, or **Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync**) (depending on where you want to save the new contact information).
4. Tap the **Name** field and enter a name for this contact using the displayed keypad.
  - Tap  to access additional name entries such as: Name prefix, Given name, Middle name, Family name, and Name suffix.
5. Tap the image icon and select a photo for this contact. Selections are: **Image** or **Take picture**.

---

**Note:** The label entries below can change and are dependant on the selected destination type (ex: the Other and Custom might not appear with an Exchange ActiveSync account destination type).

---

6. Tap the label button (to the left of the **Phone** field) and scroll through the list to select a category such as **Mobile** (default), **Home**, **Work**, **Work Fax**, **Home Fax**, **Pager**, **Other**, **Custom**, or **Callback**.
7. Tap a phone number field and enter a phone number.
  - Tap  on the QWERTY keyboard to remove a previously entered phone number.
  - Tap  to enter an additional phone number
  - Tap  to remove a previously entered phone number.
8. Enter additional information such as: **Groups**, **Ringtone**, **Message alert**, and **Vibration pattern** to input additional category information.
  - **Add another field** contains the following options: Phonetic name, Organization, Email, IM, Address, Notes, Nickname, Website, Internet call, Events, or Relationship.


- Use your finger to slide the page up or down to see additional fields and categories.

9. Tap **Save** to complete and store the new entry.


– or –

Tap **Cancel** to delete the current entry.


#### To save a Number from your Keypad:

1. From the Home screen, tap  (**Phone**).
2. Enter a phone number using the on-screen dialpad.
3. Tap **Add to Contacts** → **Create contact** or select the Contact entry from the on-screen list.

– or –

Press  and then tap **Add to Contacts** → **Create contact** or select the Contact entry from the on-screen list.

- If you're updating an existing contact, tap the entry from the list and proceed to step 5.
4. Tap a destination type (**Phone**, **SIM**, **Google**, or **Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync**) (depending on where you want to save the new contact information).

5. Tap the **Name** field and enter a name for this contact using the displayed keypad.
  - Tap  to access additional name entries such as: Name prefix, Given name, Middle name, Family name, and Name suffix.
6. Tap the image icon and select a photo for this contact. Selections are: **Image**, **Take picture**, or **Pictures by people**.

---

**Note:** The label entries below can change and are dependant on the selected destination type (ex: the Other and Custom might not appear with an Exchange ActiveSync account destination type).

---

7. Tap the label button (to the left of the **Phone** field) and scroll through the list to select a category such as **Mobile** (default), **Home**, **Work**, **Work Fax**, **Home Fax**, **Pager**, **Other**, **Custom**, or **Callback**.
8. Enter additional fields as desired.
9. Tap **Save** to complete and store the new entry.
  - or –
  - Tap **Cancel** to delete the current entry.

---


**Note:** For further details about how to enter characters, see *“Text Input Methods”* on page 68

---

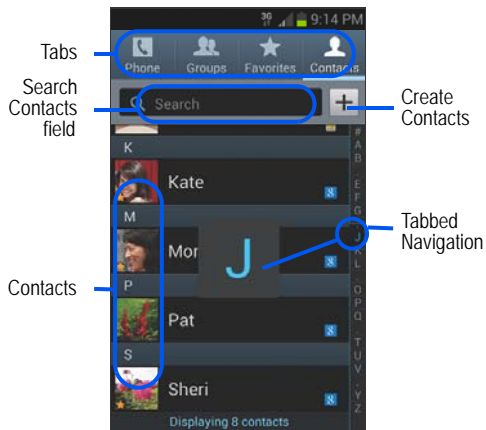
## Finding a Contact

You can store phone numbers and their corresponding names onto either your SIM card, your phone's built-in memory, or an external location (such as Google or Exchange). They are all physically separate but are used as a single entity, called **Contacts**.




Depending on the storage size of the particular SIM card, the maximum number of phone numbers the card can store may differ.

1. From the Home screen, tap  (**Contacts**).
2. Swipe up or down until you see the contact displayed.
  - or –
  - Tap the **Search** field and begin entering the entry's name. Matching entries are then displayed. This process filters through all of your current account Contact entries to only show you the matching entries.
  - or –

In a single motion, touch and hold the letter tab area (on the right) until on-screen letters appear, then scroll through the list. You are then taken to that section of the Contacts list. Touch the contact entry.

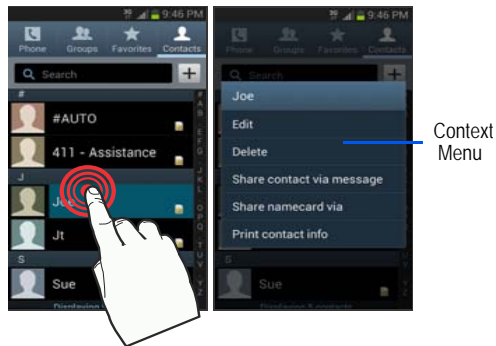


## Editing Contact Information

1. From the Home screen, tap .
  2. Tap a contact name from the list and tap  (Edit).
- or –
- Press  and tap Edit.


– or –

Touch and hold a Contacts entry from the main Contacts list and then tap Edit.






3. Edit the contact information then:
  - Tap **Save** to complete and store the new entry or
  - Tap **Cancel** to delete the current entry.

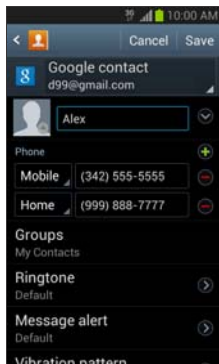
### *Adding a Number to an Existing Contact*

1. From the Home screen, tap .

2. Touch and hold an entry and select **Edit** to reveal the Contact entry's details screen.

3. Tap a phone number field and enter a phone number.

- Tap  on the QWERTY keyboard to remove a previously entered phone number.
- Tap  to enter an additional phone number
- Tap  to remove a previously entered phone number.





Contact Details Screen

4. Enter additional information such as: **Groups**, **Ringtone**, **Message alert** or tap **Vibration pattern** to input additional category information.
  - **Add another** field contains the following options: Phonetic name, Organization, Email, IM, Address, Notes, Nickname, Website, Internet call, Events, or Relationship.
  - Use your finger to slide the page up or down to see additional fields and categories.
5. Tap **Save** to complete and store the new entry.
 


– or –

Tap **Cancel** to delete the current entry.

### *Adding a Pause or Wait to a New Contact*

1. From the Home screen, tap  and use the on-screen keypad to enter a new phone number.
2. Press  and then tap **Add 2-sec pause**. This feature adds an automatic two-second pause.
 

– or –

Press  and then tap **Add wait**. This feature causes the phone to require your acceptance before sending the next set of entered digits.
3. Tap **Add to Contacts** → **Update existing**.

4. Scroll through the available list of existing entries and select the desired target.




---

**Note:** This new phone number is then added as a new number to the selected entry.

---

5. Tap the label button (to the left of the new phone number) and scroll through the list to select a category type.
6. Tap **Save** to store and update the entry.

### *Adding a Pause or Wait to an Existing Contact*

1. From the Home screen, tap .
2. Tap a contact name from the list and tap  (Edit).
3. Tap the desired number field and select  (Symbol).
4. Tap **Pause**. This feature adds an automatic two-second pause.  
– or –

Tap **Wait**. This feature causes the phone to require your acceptance before sending the next set of entered digits.


5. Enter the additional number.
6. Tap **Save** to store and update the entry.

### *Deleting Contacts*


---

**Important!** Once Contacts list entries are deleted, they cannot be recovered.

---

1. From the Home screen, tap .
2. Touch and hold a contact name from the list and select **Delete** → **OK**.

### *Contact List Options*


1. From the Home screen, tap .
2. Press . The following options display:
  - **Delete:** allows you to delete 1 or more of your contacts.
  - **Import/Export:** imports or exports contacts to or from the USB storage location, SIM card or SD card, you can also send namecards via methods such as Bluetooth, ChatON, Email, Gmail, Messaging, or Wi-Fi Direct.



- **Merge with Samsung:** allows you to merge all of your current Contact entries with your active Samsung account. If several of your contacts are from other external sources, this allows you to “back them up” or copy them to your Samsung account. Tap **OK** to continue or **Cancel** to exit.
- **Merge with Google:** allows you to merge all of your current Contact entries with your active Google/Gmail account. If several of your contacts are from other sources such as Corporate email, Internet email, Facebook, etc., this allows you to “back them up” or copy them to your Gmail account. Tap **OK** to continue or **Cancel** to exit.
- **Accounts:** allows you to **Auto sync app data** or add and manage mobile accounts on Samsung account, Google, ChatON, LDAP, Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync or Server). This option also allows you to manually synchronize all of your current contacts with their respective accounts.
- **Speed dial setting:** allows you to set up speed-dialing.
- **Send email:** allows you to send an email using your Google account.
- **Send message:** allows you to send a text or picture message.



- **Contacts to display:** allows you to choose All contacts, Phone, display contacts stored to your SIM card, Samsung account, Gmail, or only display contacts that are part of a customized list.
- **Settings:** allows you to configure where you save new contacts to, or view your service numbers, or send contact information.  
Options include: Only contacts with phones, List by, Display contacts by, Service numbers, and Contact sharing settings.

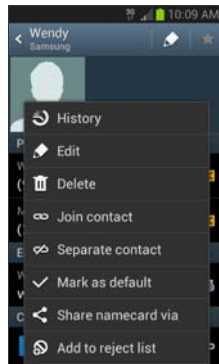
## Contact Menu Options

1. From the Home screen, tap .
2. Touch and hold an entry to reveal the context menu.  
The following options display:
  - **Edit:** allows you to edit the currently selected Contacts entry.
  - **Delete:** allows you to delete the currently selected Contacts entry.
  - **Join contact:** allows you to link the current contact to another current contact. Similar to a “see also” feature. If you can’t remember a contact’s information, linking entries can help you find the person you are looking for.

- **Share contact via message:** allows you to send the current entry info via text message.
- **Add to favorites:** allows you to copy the current Contacts entry to the list within the Favorites tab.
- **Remove from favorites:** allows you to remove the current Contacts entry from the Favorites tab.
- **Add to group:** allows you to add the current Contacts entry to an existing group.
- **Add to reject list/ Remove from reject list:** allows you to add or remove the current Contacts entry to a list of automatically rejected incoming phone numbers.
- **Share namecard via:** allows you to send the current Contact entry's information to an external recipient via either Bluetooth, ChatON, Email (Exchange or Internet), Gmail, Messaging, or Wi-Fi Direct.
- **Print contact info:** allows you to print selected information on a compatible Samsung printer.

## Contact Entry Options

1. From the Home screen, tap .
2. Tap an entry to reveal the **Contact entry's Overview Screen**. This screen contains Name, contact numbers, email, and linked contact information.
3. Press  to reveal the context menu specific to this entry.
4. Tap an available option.



Contact Overview Screen

## Joining Contact Information


Most people now maintain multiple email accounts, social networking logins, and other similar account information. For example, a Facebook account login name might differ from a corporate email account login because they are maintained separately and for different groups of people.

This device can synchronize with multiple accounts. When you synchronize your phone with those accounts, each account creates a separate contact entry in the Contacts list.

If one of your contacts (Amy Smith) has a regular email account that you maintain in Gmail, but also has a Facebook account under her maiden and married name, as well as a Video! chat account, when you merge those accounts into your Contacts list you can join all of her entries and view the information in one record.

Joining contact information makes sending messages easy. You can select any account email address or information all from one screen, versus searching multiple, individual screens to locate the desired account information.


Next time you synchronize your phone with your accounts, any updates contacts make to email account names, email addresses, etc. automatically update in your contacts list.

1. From the Home screen, tap .
2. Tap a contact name (the name you want to link to another entry) to reveal the **Contact entry's Overview Screen**.

---

**Note:** Typically this is the same contact with a different name or account information.

---

3. Press  and then tap **Join contact**.
4. Tap the second contact entry (the entry in which to link). The second contact is now linked with the first and the account information is merged into one screen.

---

**Note:** The information is still maintained in both entries, but displays in one record for easier viewing when you link the contacts.

---


---

**Important!** It is the second contact image that is displayed for both, but the first contact's name that is used.  
For example: If Amy (original entry) is joined with Julie (second entry). Julie appears to disappear and only Amy remains. Tap the Amy entry (showing the Julie image) to view both.

---

5. Tap the main linked contact to view the contact information you linked. The contacts and information displays with an icon next to the contact name to indicate what type of account information is contained in the entry.



## *Separating a Contact*

1. From the Home screen, tap .
2. Tap a contact name (the account name from which you want to separate an entry). This reveals the details for entry.

---

**Note:** Typically this is the same contact with a different name or account information.



---

3. Tap the **Connections** area.  
– or –  
Press  and then tap **Separate contact**.
4. Tap  next to the entry you want to separate and select **OK**. The contacts are separated and no longer display in the merged record screen. Both contacts now go back to being separately displayed.

## Marking a Contact as Default

When you use applications such as the Voice Dialer or other messaging type applications, the application needs to know which information is primary (default) in a contact entry list. For example, when you say “Call John Smith”, if you have three phone records for John Smith, the Voice dialer is looking for the “default” number or entry.

The **Mark as default** option marks one entry in a contact record to use as the default. This comes in handy when you have multiple entries for the same person.

1. From the Home screen, tap .
2. Tap a Contact entry.
3. Press  and then tap **Mark as default**. The Mark as default screen displays radio buttons next to the contact name, phone number, or other contact information.
4. Tap the radio button next to the entry information you want to be the primary information (such as phone number or email) and select **Done**.



---

**Note:** If there are multiple phone numbers assigned to an entry, assigning one as the default will automatically dial that number when the contact is selected for dialing.

---

## Sending a Namecard

A Namecard contains contact information, and can be sent to recipients as a Virtual Business Card (V-card) attachment using Bluetooth, Gmail, or as a message.

1. From the Home screen, tap .
2. Tap a Contact entry.
3. Press  and then tap **Share namecard via** and select a delivery method: **Bluetooth**, **ChatON**, **Email** (Exchange or Internet), **Gmail**, **Messaging**, or **Wi-Fi Direct**.

The Namecard attaches to the selected message type and is delivered when you send the message.



---

**Note:** Email appears as an option only after an Internet or Exchange email account has been created.

---

## Sending All Current Namecards


Rather than selecting once Contact entry at a time, you can send all of your current entries at once.

1. From the Home screen, tap .
2. Press  and then tap **Import/Export → Share namecard via**.

3. Tap **Select all** to place a check mark alongside all currently displayed Contact entries.
4. Tap **Done** and select a delivery method: **Bluetooth**, **ChatON**, **Email** (Exchange or Internet), **Gmail**, **Messaging**, or **Wi-Fi Direct**.

### *Sending a namecard using Bluetooth*

You must create a Contact prior to sending a namecard to a recipient. For more information, refer to *"Creating a Contact"* on page 82.

1. From the Home screen, tap .
2. Touch and hold the entry to reveal the on-screen context menu.
3. Tap **Share namecard via** → **Bluetooth**.

---

**Important!** You must activate Bluetooth to use this feature.



---

4. Tap the Bluetooth device in which to send this name card. Bluetooth forwards the namecard to the recipient.

## Copying Contact Information

### *Copying Contact Information to the SIM Card*

The default storage location for saving phone numbers to your Contacts list is your device's built-in memory. This procedure allows you to copy numbers saved to the phone's memory onto the SIM card.



1. From the Home screen, tap .
2. From the Contacts List, press  and then tap **Import/Export** → **Export to SIM card**.
3. Tap **Select all** to choose all current phone contact entries.  
– or –

Select a specific entry by touching an entry. A check mark indicates a selection.

4. Tap **Done**. The name and phone number for the selected contact is then copied to the SIM.

## Copying Contact Information to the microSD Card


This procedure allows you to copy entry information saved on the phone's memory, onto the SIM card.


1. From the Home screen, tap .
2. From the Contacts List, press  and then tap **Import/Export** → **Export to SD card**.
3. Tap **OK** to choose all current phone contact entries.

## Synchronizing Contacts

Syncing data from your managed accounts allows you to add and manage a new or existing contact from your online or remote accounts to your phone. Prior to syncing, you must first have an active Google or Microsoft Exchange account with current Contact entries, and be signed into your account via the phone.

With syncing, any Contacts entries (with phone numbers, email addresses, pictures, etc.) are updated and synced with your device.

1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings** and then navigate to the **Accounts** area.

2. Select the email account containing the contacts you wish to synchronize.
3. Tap  within the account field to reveal the account's synchronization settings screen.
4. To synchronize only Contacts, toggle the active state of the **Sync Contacts** field. A green checkmark indicates the feature is enabled.

---

**Note:** The process of updating your Contacts tab can take several minutes. If your list has not been updated after 10-20 minutes, repeat step 2-3.

---

5. Your **Contacts** tab then reflects any updated Contact information.

---

**Note:** Syncing of contacts requires you are logged into your Gmail and Corporate accounts via the device.

---



## Display Options

The Display options menu allows you to choose which contacts to display. You can also choose to display only contacts that have phone numbers.

---

**Note:** Once a display filter has been selected, only those Contact entries are shown until the **All contacts** option is re-selected.


---

1. From the Home screen, tap .
2. Press  and then tap **Contacts to display**. Select any of the following to filter according to the selection:
  - **All contacts** allows you to display all available Contacts.
  - **Phone** lists those Contacts currently found only on your Phone.
  - **S M** lists those Contacts currently found only on your SIM card.
  - **Samsung account** lists those Contacts currently found and synced within the Samsung account.
  - **Google** lists those Contacts currently found within the Google account.

- **Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync** lists those Contacts currently found within the Exchange account.
- **Customized list** allows you to enable which account categories are displayed. For example, on Google contacts, you can filter which Contact categories are shown (Friends, Family, etc.)

## Adding more Contacts via Accounts and Sync

When you synchronize applications such as Facebook, Twitter, MySpace, a corporate email account, or Google, using the Accounts and sync option synchronizes the data from the selected account type with your Contacts list.

1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings** and then navigate to the **Accounts** area.
2. Tap **Add account**.
3. Determine which type of account information you want to synchronize with your Contact list. Selections are: **Samsung account**, **ChatON**, **Email**, **Facebook**, **Google**, **LDAP**, **Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync** or **Server**.
4. Tap an account type to add.



5. Follow the prompts. The selected account type synchronizes with your Contacts list.
6. After synchronizing accounts you may want to link contact information. For more information, refer to *"Joining Contact Information"* on page 91.


#### To add Facebook content to your Contacts list:

You can now add your Facebook contact information, such as pictures, email, and phone numbers directly to your Contacts list. All of their current contact information is then migrated over to your phone. If a Contacts entry already exists with a slightly different name, separate entries are created and can later be linked (joined) together into a single entry.


---


**Important!** This process not only synchronizes your contact information but also your status, events, and more.

---

1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings** and then navigate to the **Accounts** area.
2. Tap **Add account** → **Facebook**.
3. You are prompted to download the Facebook application from the Play Store.
  - Tap **Install** → **Accept & download** to complete the process.
4. Log into your Facebook account:
  - Enter your account's access **Email** and **Password** information and tap **Log in**.
5. If prompted, configure any requested optional permissions and tap **Log in**.
6. Tap those contact settings you wish to synchronize (all are enabled by default). A green check mark indicates the feature is enabled.
  - Choose from: **Sync interval settings**, **Sync Calendar**, or **Sync Gallery**.
7. Tap **Done** to complete the login and sync process.
8. If prompted, select a Contacts Sync option. Choose from: Sync all, Sync with existing contacts, or Don't sync. Tap **Sync** to complete the process.
9. Return to the Accounts and sync screen and resync this new Social Network account.

#### To resync Social Network Contacts:

1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings** and then navigate to the **Accounts** area.

2. Tap  within the SNS account field to reveal the account's synchronization settings screen.
3. Choose the parameters to sync (ex: Sync Calendar, Sync Contacts, or Sync Gallery) and tap **Sync now**.

---

**Note:** From the main Accounts and sync page you can also tap **Sync all** to resync all accounts.

---



## Additional Contact Options

### *Sending an Email to a Contact*

---

**Note:** Contacts must contain an email account and address before you can use the Send email feature.

---

1. From the Home screen, tap .
2. Press  and then tap **Send email**. Contacts that contain an email address display.
3. Tap the contact(s) to which you want to send an email. A check mark displays next to the selection.

---

**Note:** The select contact must have an email as part of their details screen.

---



4. Tap **Done**.
5. Select an email account type.
6. Compose the email and tap **Send**.

### *Export/Import*

For more information, refer to *"Copying Contact Information"* on page 94.

### *Contact List Settings*

From this menu you can determine the default storage location for Contacts, display your phone's primary number, and view service numbers listed in your Contact list.

1. From the Home screen, tap .
2. Press  and then tap **Settings**. Configure any of the following options:
  - **Only contacts with phones** allows you to display only those contacts containing phone numbers.
  - **Sort list by** defines how the current list of Contacts are sorted: **Given name** or **Family name**.
  - **Display contacts by** defines how the current list of Contacts are listed: **Given name first** (ex: Steve Smith) or **Family name first** (Smith, Steve).

- **Contact sharing settings** allows you configure how your Contacts entries are sent: individually or as a single file containing all available entries.  
Tap **Settings** to select a share setting.
- **Send all namecards** allows you to set your Contact sharing option to all so that your entire Contacts entries are sent as a group and not as multiple single files. If all your entries are selected only a single file is sent.

---

**Note:** Your destination device must support this feature or no entries will be received by the external device.




---

- **Send individual namecards** allows you to set your default to send individual contacts one at a time. Even if you select all your entries, each is sent individually.

## Groups

This feature allows you to add a new or existing contact to a call group. This group can be one of the already present groups (Family, Friends, or Work) or a user-created group.

### Creating a New Caller Group




1. From the Home screen, tap  →  (Groups tab).
2. Press  and then tap **Create**.
3. Tap the **Group name** field and use the on-screen keypad to enter a new group name. For more information, refer to *“Text Input Methods”* on page 68.
4. Tap **Group ringtone** and select a ringtone for the group. Selections are: **Default**, **Ringtones**, or **Go to My Files**.
5. Tap **Vibration pattern** and select a unique vibration pattern to be associated with this group.
6. Tap **Add member** to then select from a list of available contacts, tap the contact(s) you want to add, then tap **Done**.
7. Tap **Save** to store the newly created group.

---




**Note:** Some externally maintained group types (such as Google) can only be managed or updated remotely online vs via the device. These external types will not allow editing or deleting members locally using the phone.

---

### *Adding an Existing Entry to a Current Caller Group*

1. From the Home screen, tap  → .
2. Tap a group entry →  (Add group member).
3. From the available list of contacts, tap the contact(s) you want to add. A check mark displays next to contact entry.
4. Tap **Done**. The selected contacts are added to the group.



### *Removing an Entry From a Caller Group*

1. From the Home screen, tap  → .
2. Tap a group entry.
3. Press  and then tap **Remove member**.
4. Tap all of the contacts you want to remove from this group. A checkmark displays next to contact entry.




5. Tap **Done**. The contacts are removed from the group.

### *Editing a Caller Group*





To edit a Group entry, there must be at least one member as part of the selected group.

1. From the Home screen, tap  → .
2. Touch and hold a group entry then select **Edit group**.
3. Make modifications to the **Group name**, **Group ringtone**, or **Vibration pattern** fields.
4. Tap **Add member** to add members to the Group.
5. Tap **Save**.

### *Deleting a Caller Group*



1. From the Home screen, tap  → .
2. Press  and then tap **Delete groups**.
3. Select either **Select all** or tap the desired group.
4. Tap **Delete**.
5. Select **Group only** to delete the Group but leave individual contact information, or **Group and group members** to delete the Group and all contact information.

## *Sending a Message to a Group*


1. From the Home screen, tap  →  .
2. Tap an existing group, and press  and then tap **Send message**.  
– or –  
Touch and hold a group entry and select **Send message**.
3. Select the recipients of the new message (indicated by a green checkmark). If an entry contains multiple phone numbers, each must be selected individually.
4. Tap **Done**.
5. Type your message, and tap  (**Send**).

## The Favorites Tab

The Favorites tab is a list of the phone numbers that have been designated as favorite contacts. For more information, refer to “*Logs Tab*” on page 65.

1. From the Home screen, tap .
2. Tap  (**Favorites** tab).

### **Adding a contact to your favorites list:**

1. From within the Favorites tab, press  and select **Add to Favorites**.
2. Place a check mark alongside those current Contacts entries you wish to assign as favorites.
3. Tap **Done** to complete the process.

## Section 7: Messages

---

This section describes how to send or receive different types of messages. It also explains the features and functionality associated with messaging.

### Types of Messages

Your phone provides the following message types:

- Text Messages
- Multimedia (Picture, Video, and Audio) Messages
- Email and Gmail Messages
- Google+
- Google Talk
- Messenger

The Short Message Service (SMS) lets you send and receive text messages to and from other mobile phones or email addresses. To use this feature, you may need to subscribe to your service provider's message service.

The Multimedia Messaging Service (MMS) lets you send and receive multimedia messages (such as picture, video, and audio messages) to and from other mobile phones or email addresses. To use this feature, you may need to subscribe to your service provider's multimedia message service.

### *Message Icons on the Status Bar*




Icons are displayed on the Status Bar at the top of the display when new messages are received. For more information, refer to “Status Bar” on page 21.

---

**Important!** During the creation of a text message, adding an image, sound file, or video clip automatically changes it from a text message (SMS) to a multimedia message (MMS).




---

---

**Note:** The Messaging application can also be accessed by pressing  and then tapping  (Apps) →  (Messaging).

---



## Creating and Sending Messages

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Messaging) →  (Compose).
2. Tap the **Enter recipient** field to manually enter a recipient.  
– or –
3. Tap  to select from one of the following:
  - **Groups:** to select a recipient from the Group list.
  - **Favorites:** to select a recipient from the Favorites list.
  - **Contacts:** to select a recipient from your Contacts list (valid entries must have a wireless phone number or email address).
  - **Logs:** to select a recipient from a list of recently sent messages.
4. If adding a recipient from either Logs, Contacts, or Group, tap the contact to place a checkmark in the selection box then tap **Done**. The contact displays in the recipient field.

---

**Note:** Delete any unnecessary members by tapping their name/number in the recipient area and selecting **Delete**.

---


5. Add more recipients by tapping either the **Enter recipient** field or  and selecting recipients.
6. Tap the **Enter message** field and use the on-screen keypad to enter a message. For more information, refer to “*Text Input Methods*” on page 68.
7. Review your message and tap  (**Send**).
8. If you have more than one recipient, the same text message is sent to all recipients in the Enter Recipients field.

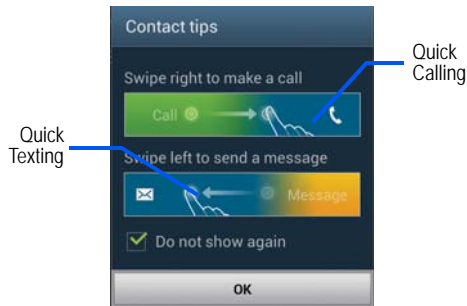
---

**Note:** If you exit a message before you send it, it will be automatically saved as a draft.

---




## Quick Messaging a Number from the Contacts List

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Contacts).
2. Locate an entry from the Contacts list.
3. In a single motion, touch and slide your finger over the number by going to the left. This action addresses either a new text message or Bobsled message to the selected recipient.



## Message Options



### Options before composing a message

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Messaging).
2. Before composing a message, press  from the main Messaging screen to display additional messaging options:
  - **Search:** allows you to search through all of your messages for a certain word or string of words. Use the on-screen keypad to enter a word or phrase in which to search, then tap . For more information, refer to "Message Search" on page 110.
  - **Delete threads:** allows you to delete any message thread. Select the messages to delete and a green checkmark will appear next to the message. Tap Delete. For more information, refer to "Deleting a single message thread" on page 109.
  - **Draft messages:** displays the draft messages folder and its contents.
  - **Scheduled messages:** displays the scheduled messages folder and its contents.




- **Locked messages:** displays the locked messages folder and its contents.
  - **Spam messages:** displays the spam messages folder and its contents.
  - **Settings:** allows you to access Messaging settings. For more information, refer to *"Messaging Settings"* on page 110.
3. From the Messaging screen list, touch and hold an on-screen message and select an option:
- **Add to Contacts:** allows you to add the sender to either a new or existing Contacts entry.
  - **View contact:** allows you to view the current entry information for the sender.
  - **Delete thread:** deletes the entire message and its bubbles. Deleting a single message thread. For more information, refer to *"Deleting a single message thread"* on page 109.
  - **Register as spam.:** allows you to tag a number as spam so that these messages can be directly delivered to your spam folder.

### *Options while composing a message*

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Messaging).
2. From within an open message, press  to display additional messaging options:
  - **Call:** places an outgoing call to the sender.
  - **Insert smiley:** allows you to add insert smiley icons images (emoticons).
  - **Add text:** allows you to add text items from sources such as: Memo, Calendar, Location, Contacts, and Text templates.
  - **Preview (only in MMS):** allows you to add preview the MMS message prior to delivery.
  - **Add to Contacts:** allows you to add the current entry as a new Contact.
  - **View contact:** reveals the current Contact's overview screen.
  - **Add slide:** converts an SMS message into an MMS (Multimedia) message and allows you to attach an existing slideshow.
  - **Delete slide:** allows you to remove a previously attached slideshow.
  - **Add subject:** allows you to enter a subject.

- **Duration (5 secs)** (only in MMS): allows you to change the duration of the image slideshow.
- **Layout (bottom)** (only in MMS): allows you to change the layout.
- **Add recipients**: allows you to enter additional recipients to the message.
- **Scheduled message**: allows you to assign the current message to be sent out at a set date and time.
- **Delete messages**: allows you to erase either select specific message bubbles or all current messages bubbles.
- **Register as spam.**: allows you to tag a number as spam so that these messages can be directly delivered to your spam folder.
- **Discard**: closes the current open message.

## *Adding attachments to a message*

To add an attachment to your message, tap  (**Attach**) and select one of the following options:

- **Images**: allows you to tap an existing image from your Pictures list to add it to your message.
- **Take picture**: allows you to temporarily exit the message, take a photo with phone's camera, and then add it to your message by tapping **Save**.
- **Video**: allows you to choose an existing video from the Videos list, then add it to your message.
- **Record video**: allows you to temporarily exit the message, record a video clip using the phone's camera, and then add it to your message by tapping **Save**.
- **Audio**: allows you to choose an existing audio file from the Audio list, then add it to your message by tapping the circle to the right of the audio so that it turns green, then tapping **Done**.
- **Record audio**: allows you to temporarily exit the message and record an audio clip using the phone's microphone. It is then automatically attached to the message.
- **Memo**: allows you to select a current Memo then add it by tapping **Done**.

- **S Planner:** allows you to add an event from your calendar.
- **Location:** allows you to attach a thumbnail of a map showing your location.
- **Contacts:** allows you to tap on an existing Address Book entry, then add it to your message by tapping **Done**.


### Adding Additional Text

You can copy text such as names, phone numbers, and events from your Contacts, Calendar, or a Memo.




1. While composing a message, press  → **Add text**.
2. At the Add text screen, select one of the following:
  - **Memo:** allows you to select a current Memo then add it by tapping **Done**.
  - **S Planner:** allows you to add the name, date, and time of a calendar event to your message.
  - **Location:** allows you to add an address and the link to the location on Google Maps.
  - **Contacts:** allows you to add the name and phone number of any of your contacts to your message.
  - **Text templates:** allows you to add pre-defined phrases and sentences. For more information, refer to *"Text Templates"* on page 114.

The information is added to your message.

### Viewing Newly Received Messages

When you receive a message, your phone notifies you by displaying  within the Notification area at the top left of your Home screen.

To read a message:


1. Open the Notification Bar and select the message. For more information, refer to *"Notification Bar"* on page 26.  
– or –  
From the Home screen, tap  then tap the new message to view its contents. The selected message displays on the screen.
2. Tap  to play a multimedia message.
  - To pause playback of the multimedia message, tap .
3. In a single motion, touch and scroll up or down the page to scroll through the message (if additional pages were added).

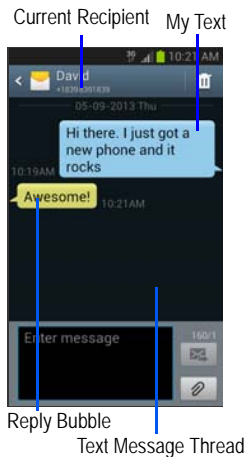
## Message Threads

Sent and received text and picture messages are grouped into message threads. Threaded messages allow you to see all the messages exchanged (similar to a chat program) and displays a contact on the screen.


Message threads are listed in the order in which they were received, with the latest message displayed at the top.


To reply to a text message:

1. From the Home screen, tap .
2. Tap a message thread.
3. Tap the **Enter message** field and then type your reply message.



Your texts are colored Blue and your caller's replies are Yellow.

4. Tap  (Send) to deliver your reply.  
– or –

Press  and then select one of the available message options (page 104).

To access message thread options:


- From the main Messaging screen, touch and hold the message to display the following options:
  - **View contact:** displays the Contact's Overview page.
  - **Add to contact:** begins the process of adding the new number to your Contacts list.
  - **Delete thread:** deletes the currently selected message thread.
  - **Register as spam:** adds the current sender to a spam list. Any new texts from this sender are automatically blocked.

To access additional Bubble options:



- Touch and hold the message bubble within an active message conversation to display the following options:
  - **Delete message:** deletes the currently selected message bubble from the thread.
  - **Copy message text:** copies the currently selected message bubble from the thread.
  - **Lock/Unlock message:** locks or unlocks the currently selected message bubble from being accidentally deleted.
  - **Save attachment:** allows you to save the attached media file.
  - **Forward:** allows you to forward the currently selected message bubble to an external recipient.
  - **Copy to S M:** copies the currently selected message bubble as a single text message within the SIM card.
  - **View message details:** displays details for the currently selected message bubble.

## Deleting Messages


### *Deleting a single message thread*

1. From the Home screen, tap .
2. Touch and hold a message from the Messages list, then select **Delete thread**.
3. At the prompt, tap **OK** to delete or **Cancel** to exit.



### *Deleting multiple message threads*

1. From the Home screen, tap .
2. Press  and then tap **Delete threads**.
3. Tap each message thread you want to delete. A checkmark displays beside each selected message.
4. Tap **Delete**.
5. At the prompt, tap **OK** to delete or **Cancel** to end the process.

### *Deleting a single message bubble*




1. From the Home screen, tap .
2. Open a message to reveal the message string.
3. Touch and hold a message bubble, then select **Delete message**.
4. At the prompt, tap **OK** to delete or **Cancel** to exit.

### *Deleting multiple message bubbles*

1. From the Home screen, tap .
2. Open a message to reveal the message string.
3. Press  and then tap **Delete messages**.
4. Place a check mark on the individual bubbles targeted for deletion or choose **Select all**.
5. Tap **Delete** to erase or **Cancel** to exit.



## Message Search

You can search through your messages by using the Message Search feature.

1. From the Home screen, tap .
2. Press  and then tap **Search**.
3. Use the on-screen keypad to enter a word or phrase in which to search, then tap .
4. All messages that contain the entered search string display.

## Messaging Settings

To configure the settings for text messages, multimedia messages, Voice mails, and Push messages.

1. From the Home screen, tap .
2. Press  and then tap **Settings**.

The following Messaging settings are available:

### Display

- **Bubble style:** allows you to choose from several bubble styles for your messages. Bubbles are the rounded boxes that surround each message.
- **Background style:** allows you to choose from several background styles for your messages.

- **Use the volume key:** allows you to change the text size by using the up or down volume keys.

### General settings

- **Delete old messages:** deletes old messages when the limit is reached, rather than overwriting them.
- **Text message limit:** allows you to set a limit on how many text messages are allowed in one conversation.
- **Multimedia message limit:** allows you to set a limit on how many multimedia messages are allowed in one conversation.
- **Text templates:** provides a series of default text templates and lets you add and delete templates.

### Text message (SMS) settings

- **Delivery reports:** when this option is activated, the network informs you whether or not your message was delivered.
- **Manage SIM card messages:** Manage messages stored on your SIM card.
- **Message centre:** displays the phone number of your message centre.
- **Input mode:** allows you to set the input mode for your text messages. Choose from: GSM Alphabet, Unicode, or Automatic.

### Multimedia message (MMS) settings

- **Delivery reports:** when this option is activated, the network informs you whether or not your message was delivered.
- **Read reports:** when this option is activated, your phone receives a request for a read reply along with your message to the recipient.
- **Auto-retrieve:** allows the message system to automatically retrieve messages.
- **Roaming auto-retrieve:** allows the message system to automatically retrieve while roaming.
- **Creation mode:** allows you to select the creation mode: Free, Restricted, or Warning.
  - **Restricted:** you can only create and submit messages with content belonging to the Core MM Content Domain.
  - **Warning:** the phone will warn you via pop up messages that you are creating a multimedia message which does not fit the Core MM Content Domain.
  - **Free:** you may add any content to the message.
- **MMS alert:** alerts you when the messaging modes changes from an SMS (text) to MMS (multimedia) mode.

## Push message settings

- **Push messages:** allows you to receive push messages from the network.
- **Service loading:** allows you to set the type of service loading notification. Choose from: Always, Prompt, or Never.

## Cell broadcast (CB) settings

- **CB activation:** allows you to receive CB messages.
- **Channel configuration:** configure the receiving channel (All channels or My channel) and Add channel to My channels.

## Notification settings

- **Notifications:** allows you to see message notifications on your status bar.
- **Select ringtone:** allows you to set the ringtone for your message notifications.
- **Vibrate:** allows you to enable/disable the vibration mode associated with message alerts.
- **Message alert repetition:** allows you to set the interval for new message alerts. Choose from: Once, Every 2 minutes, or Every 10 minutes.
- **Preview message:** when enabled, allows you to view a brief preview of new message text on the Status bar.

## Signature settings

- **Add signature:** when enabled, this feature allows you to create a signature at the end of your outgoing text messages.
- **Signature text:** allows you to enter a desired signature for your message.

## Spam message settings


- **Spam settings:** when enabled, allows you to configure available spam settings such as:
  - **Register number as spam:** allows you to manually enter and assign a phone number as being sent from a spam source.
  - **Register phrase as spam:** allows you to assign a specific text phrase as belonging to a spam message. Ex: Dear friend.
  - **Block unknown senders:** when active, automatically blocks incoming messages from unknown sources or blocked numbers.






## Assigning Messages as Spam


You can now assign either a phone number as spam or use a key term or phrase. Any message assigned as spam is automatically placed with your Spam messages folder.

To assign a phone number from Messages list as spam:

1. From the Home screen, tap .
2. Touch and hold a message with a phone number.
3. Select **Register as spam** and tap **OK**.

To assign a phone number manually as spam:

1. From the Home screen, tap .
2. Press  and then tap **Settings**.
3. Locate and activate the **Spam settings** option (tap the selection box to place a checkmark in the box).
4. Tap **Register number as spam** →  (Create).
5. Tap the **Number** field to manually enter phone number.  
– or –

Tap  to select from either your existing Logs or Contacts.

– or –




Tap **Match criteria** and select a parameter that must match for the spam action to take effect. Choose from: Same as, Starts with (ex: 800 or 888), Ends with, or includes.

6. Tap **Save**.

To register text phrases as spam:

Some incoming messages might not be associated with a phone number but rather an email address. In these cases, the only way to block those messages is to assign a key used term or phrase to activate the Spam block.

For example: "Dear friend", "Stock Alert", or "Act Now".

1. From the Home screen, tap .
2. Press  and then tap **Settings**.
3. Locate and activate the **Spam settings** option (tap the selection box to place a checkmark in the box).
4. Tap **Register phrase as spam** →  (Create).
5. Enter a term or word into the field.

---



**Note:** The term is case sensitive, e.g., "Act Now" is not the same as "act now".

---

6. Tap **Save**.

To register unknown numbers as spam:



Some incoming messages might not be associated with either a phone number or email address. These incoming messages contain no information as their info is blocked by the sender.

1. From the Home screen, tap 
2. Press  and then tap **Settings**.
3. Locate and activate the **Spam settings** option (tap the selection box to place a checkmark in the box).
4. Tap **Block unknown senders**. A green checkmark indicates the feature is active.
  - **Block unknown senders**: when active, automatically blocks incoming messages from unknown sources or blocked numbers.

If an incoming message is designated as coming from an unknown sender, it is automatically assigned as spam and is now located in your Spam folder.



## Accessing Your Spam Folder

Any message assigned as spam is automatically placed with your Spam messages folder.




1. From the Home screen, tap 
2. Press  and then tap **Spam messages**.

## Text Templates

This screen displays your available text message reply templates. This is a readily accessible list of both default and user-defined text snippets that can be used to quickly reply to incoming messages.

1. From the Home screen, tap 
2. From the Messaging list, press  and then tap **Settings → Text templates**.
3. Tap a message to immediately insert it into your current message conversation.

To create your own text template:

1. From the Home screen, tap 
2. From the Messaging list, press  and then tap **Text templates**.
3. Tap  (**Create template**).
4. Enter a new text string and tap **Save**.

## Email

The Email application enables you to review and create email using several email services. You can also receive text message alerts when you receive an important email. Your phone's Email application lets you access and manage multiple email accounts simultaneously in one convenient location.





There are currently three main types of email accounts on your phone: Gmail, Internet-based email (Gmail, Yahoo, etc.), and Microsoft Exchange (Corporate email or Outlook®).

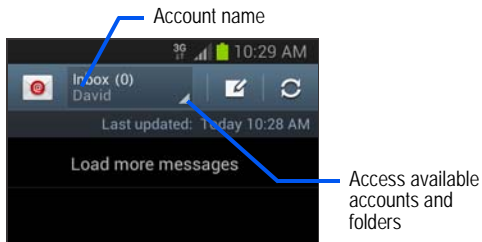
To send and receive email messages through an ISP (Internet Service Provider) account, or if you wish to use your device to access your corporate email through a VPN (Virtual Private Network), you will first need to set up an IMAP or POP account.

- **IMAP** (Internet Message Access Protocol) - This protocol is frequently used in large networks and commercial settings. IMAP4 is the current standard.
- **POP3** (Post Office Protocol) - This protocol is supported by most ISPs (Internet service providers) and common among consumer applications. POP3 is the current standard.

- **Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync** - This protocol is frequently used with a large corporate email server system and provides access to email, contact, and calendar synchronization.

### *Creating an Internet Email Account*

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Email).
2. If you already have other email account setup:
  - Open an existing email account, press  and then tap Settings →  (Add new account).





3. Enter your **Email address** and **Password** information.
  - **Email address:** your Internet email address.




- **Password:** typically your network access password (case-sensitive). To display the password as you enter it in the associated field, tap **Show password**.
4. If you need to configure your connection settings manually (POP3 or IMAP), tap **Manual setup**. Follow the on-screen prompts and enter the information specific to your email provider.
  5. Tap **Next**.
  6. At the **Account options** screen, select the frequency which the device should check for new email on the server during Peak schedule and Off-peak schedule.
    - Tap the **Sync Email** field to enable automatic synchronization of email between your device and the remote server.
    - Tap the **Notify me when email arrives** field to receive new email notifications.
  7. At the **Set up email** screen, name the account and enter a screen name to identify yourself on this account.
    - The unique account name is used to differentiate this account from other email accounts accessed by your device.
  8. Tap **Done** to store the new account.

Messages for this account display on the Inbox tab. You can also view Personal information for this account, Receipts (if you setup the account to return receipts), Travel information, and more (if available).



### *Opening an Email*





1. From the Home screen, tap  →  (Email).
2. Tap the account name field (upper-left) to open the complete email account list page.
  - Selecting **Combined view** allows you to view all the emails for your current accounts, managed by the application, to be listed on a single screen.
3. Select an email account and tap an email message.

### *Refreshing Email messages*

1. From the Home screen, tap  →  (Email).
2. Select an email account.
  - If you are already in an email account, tap the account name field (upper-left) to open the complete email account list page.
  - Select an available email account.
3. Tap  (Refresh).

### *Composing Email*


1. From the Home screen, tap  →  (Email).

5. Tap the account name field (upper-left) to open the complete email account list page and tap an account.
3. Tap **Inbox** →  (**Compose**).
4. Enter the recipient's email address in the **To** field.
  - If you are sending the email message to several recipients, separate the email addresses by a comma. You can add as many message recipients as you want.
5. Press  and then tap **Add Cc/Bcc** to add additional copy recipients.
  - Use the **Cc** field to carbon copy additional recipients.
  - Use the **Bcc** field to blind copy additional recipients.
6. Tap the **Subject** field and enter the email subject.
7. Tap the email text field and compose your email message.
  - To add an attachment (such as image, video, audio, etc.), tap  **Attach** (from the top of the screen) and make a category selection.
    - Tap the file you wish to attach.
    - Tap  to delete the attached file.





---

**Note:** If you attach an image to your email, you have the option to resize it prior to delivery. Choose from: Original, Large (70%), Medium (30%), or Small (10%). Once chosen, tap **OK**.

---

8. Once complete, tap  (**Send**).

### *Configuring Email Settings*

1. From the Home screen, tap  →  (**Email**).
2. Select an account.
3. Press  and then tap **Settings** → **<account>**.
4. Alter any of the following settings:
  - **Account name:** displays your uniquely created account display name.
  - **Your name:** displays the name used in the From field of your outgoing email messages.
  - **Signature:** Lets you attach a customized signature to the bottom of all outgoing emails.
    - In a single motion touch and slide the **Signature** slider to the right to turn it on .
    - Tap the **Signature** field, change the current text, and tap **Done** to save the new signature.

- **Default account:** Assign this account as the default email account used for outgoing messages.
- **Always Cc/Bcc myself** allows you to include your own email address in either the CC, Bcc, or None fields. Lets you always receive a copy of outgoing emails.
- **Forward with attachments:** Lets you include attachments when forwarding an email.
- **Recent messages:** adjusts the number of on-screen messages shown in the current category list at any one time.
- **Show images:** allows you to view embedded images located within the body of the currently displayed email.
- **Security options:** provides access to advanced email security options.
- **Sync Email:** enables automatic email syncing between your device and the remote server.
- **Auto download attachments:** allows the device to automatically download email attachments when an active Wi-Fi connection is detected. This process speeds up the process of downloading an emails attachments for offline review by not using a 3G or 4G network connection.
- **Size to retrieve emails:** configures the incoming email size allowed to pass through to your phone automatically without user interaction. Emails with attachments larger than configured will have to be retrieved manually.
- **Auto resend times:** enables the device to resend an outgoing email a specified number of times if delivery fails.
- **Sync schedule:** allows you to control the email sync schedule on both Peak and Off-Peak times.
- **Email notifications:** Activates the email notification icon to appear within the Notifications area of the status bar when a new email (Gmail, etc.) is received.
- **Select ringtone:** Plays a selected ringtone when a new email message is received.
- **Vibrate:** Activates a vibration when a new email message is received.
- **Incoming settings:** Lets you specify incoming email settings, such as User name, Password, IMAP server, Security type, Port, and IMAP path prefix.
- **Outgoing settings:** Lets you specify outgoing email settings, such as SMTP server, Security type, Port, Require sign-in, User name, or Password.

---





**Note:** Some the above options may not be displayed when using some Internet account types.

---

## Microsoft Exchange Email (Outlook)

Your phone also provides access to your company's Outlook Exchange server. If your company uses either Microsoft Exchange Server 2003 or 2007, you can use this email application to wirelessly synchronize your email, Contacts, and Calendar information directly with your company's Exchange server.

### *Setting Up a Microsoft Exchange Email account*

1. From the Home screen, tap  →  (Email).
2. If you already have other email account setup:
  - Open an existing email account, press  and then tap Settings →  (Add new account).
3. Enter your Email address and Password information.
  - **Email address:** your Outlook email address.
  - **Password:** typically your network access password (case-sensitive).
4. Tap **Show password** to display the password as you enter it in the associated field.

5. Tap **Send email from this account by default**, to make this your default email account for outbound emails.

---

**Note:** If selected, the **Manual setup** button changes to read **Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync**. If activated, skip to step 7.

---

6. Tap **Next**. Consult your Network or IT Administrator for further details and support.
7. Tap **Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync** (from the add new email account screen).

---

**Note:** If prompted with an on-screen notification that the connection that the "Setup could not finish", tap **Edit details** to continue with a manual update of necessary information.

---

8. When prompted to provide additional detailed information within the Exchange server settings screen, enter an updated **Domain**, and confirm your **user name** and **Password** information.

---

**Important!** Remember to manually place the cursor in the correct spot and enter a Domain name before the "[Domain]\[user name]" entry. Most servers only provide a username.

---

9. Update or re-enter your **Exchange** server information within the appropriate field. This field can often be populated with incorrect or out of date information provided by your server.
  - **Exchange Server:** your exchange server remote email address. Typically starts with **mail.XXX.com**. Obtain this information from your company network administrator.

---

**Important!** Do not accept the default entry as this is a guess based on returned information.

---

- If your network requires SSL encryption, tap the **Use secure connection (SSL)** field to place a check mark in the box and activate this additional level. Most often, this option should be enabled.

- If your network requires that you accept SSL certificates, tap the **Accept all SSL certificates** field to place a check mark in the box and activate this additional level. Most often, this option is not required. Confirm this information with your IT Administrator.

---

**Important!** If your exchange server requires this feature, leaving this field unchecked can prevent connection.

---

10. Consult your IT Administrator if it is necessary to enable the **Use client certification** option.
11. With the new server information entered, tap **Next**.
12. Read the on-screen **Activation** and, when prompted, tap **OK**. The device then verifies your incoming server settings.
13. If prompted, read the **Remote security administration** information and tap **OK** to accept the service and continue.
14. Adjust the various on-screen configuration fields and tap **Next**. It may take a few seconds for the next screen to load.



- Enabling the **Automatically download attachments when connected to Wi-Fi** option decreases the wait time to access large email attachments.
15. If prompted, read the **Activate device administrator?** screen and tap **Activate** to complete the email setup process.



---

**Note:** This process can take a few minutes. If the previous setup screen re-appears, **ignore it and do not alter any fields** during this process.



---

16. Identify your new email account with a unique name, then tap **Done**.

### *Opening an Exchange Email*







1. From the Home screen, tap  →  (Email).
2. Tap the account name field (upper-left) to open the complete email account list page.
3. Select an exchange email account and tap an email message.

### *Refreshing Exchange Email*

1. From the Home screen, tap  →  (Email).
2. Select an Exchange email account.

3. Tap  (Refresh).

### *Composing Exchange Email*

1. From the Home screen, tap  →  (Email).
2. Press  and then tap **Accounts**.
3. Select an exchange email account.
4. Tap **Inbox** →  (Compose).
5. Enter the recipient's email address in the **To** field.
  - If you are sending the email message to several recipients, separate the email addresses by a comma. You can add as many message recipients as you want.
6. Press  and then tap **Add Cc/Bcc** to add additional copy recipients.
  - Use the **Cc** field to carbon copy additional recipients.
  - Use the **Bcc** field to blind copy additional recipients.
7. Tap the **Subject** field and enter the email subject.
8. Tap the email text field and compose your email message.
  - To add an attachment (such as image, video, audio, etc.), tap  **Attach** (from the top of the screen) and make a category selection.
  - Tap the file you wish to attach.

- Tap  to delete the attached file.

---

**Note:** If you attach an image to your email, you have the option to resize it prior to delivery. Choose from: Original, Large (70%), Medium (30%), or Small (10%). Once chosen, tap **OK**.

---

9. Once complete, tap  (**Send**).


### *Deleting an Exchange Email Message*


- Touch and hold an email (from your inbox list) and select **Delete** from the on-screen context menu.


– or –

With the email message displayed, tap  (**Delete**).


### *Configuring Microsoft Exchange Email Settings*

1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings** and then navigate to the **Accounts** area.
2. Tap the Microsoft Exchange account and **Settings** → **<Exchange email account>**.  
– or –

From the current Email inbox listing, press  and then tap **Settings** → **<Exchange email account>** and specify the email settings you wish to synchronize:

- **Account name** displays the name used by the device to track the account.
- **Signature:** Lets you attach a customized signature to the bottom of all outgoing emails.
  - In a single motion touch and slide to the right to turn it on .
  - Tap the **Signature** field, change the current text, and tap **Done** to save the new signature.
- **Default account:** Assign this account as the default email account used for outgoing messages.
- **Always Cc/Bcc myself** allows you to include your own email address in either the CC, Bcc, or None fields. Lets you always receive a copy of outgoing emails.
- **Forward with attachment:** Lets you include attachments when forwarding an email.
- **Show images:** allows you to view embedded images located within the body of the currently displayed email.



- **Auto download attachments:** allows the device to automatically download email attachments when an active Wi-Fi connection is detected. This process speeds up the process of downloading an emails attachments for offline review by not using a 3G or 4G network connection.
- **Period to sync Email** to assign the sync range for your incoming and outgoing email messages between your phone and your external exchange server. How many days worth of email messages should the phone and server synchronize. Choose from: **Automatic, All, 1 day, 3 days, 1 week, 2 weeks, or 1 month.**
- **Empty server trash:** allows you to delete your email account's trash bin remotely.
- **Sync schedule** allows you to configure your email sync schedule.
- **Folder sync settings** allows you to configure the sync settings for various folders such as Inbox, Drafts, Outbox, etc.
- **Out of office settings** allows you to both activate/deactivate your email's out of office settings, and configure both the start/end dates and your outgoing message.
- **Size to retrieve emails** configures the incoming email size allowed to pass through to your phone automatically without user interaction. Emails with attachments larger than configured will have to be retrieved manually.
- **Period to sync Calendar** assigns a period for your phone to sync calendar events. Choose from: **2 weeks, 1 month, 3 months, 6 months, or All calendar.**
- **Security options:** allows you to enable several security options such as: Encryption, Encryption algorithm, Sign, Sign algorithms, Email certificates, and Security policy list. These security policies could restrict some functions from corporate servers.
  - **Security policy list:** lists the current email's security policy. These policies could restrict some functions from corporate servers.
- **In case of sync conflict** allows you to assign the master source on emails. If there is a conflict with the current email sync you can assign the server as the main source for all emails (**Server has priority**) or assign the phone to be the main source and update the server accordingly (**Device has priority**).

- **Auto resend times** enables the phone to resend an outgoing email a specified number of times if delivery fails. The default is 3 auto resends.
  - **Email notifications** enables the phone to display a status bar icon when new email messages have been received.
  - **Select ringtone** assigns an audible ringtone when a new or upcoming event is pending.
  - **Vibrate** assigns a vibration when a new or upcoming event is pending.
  - **Exchange server settings** provides access to the Domain\user name, Password, and Exchange server settings.
  - **Sync Email** synchronizes emails between your device and the remote exchange server.
  - **Sync Contacts** synchronizes the contacts between your device and the remote exchange server.
  - **Sync Calendar** synchronizes your exchange calendar entries between your device and the remote exchange server.
  - **Sync Task** synchronizes your exchange tasks entries between your device and the remote exchange server.
3. Press  to return to the previous page.

## Using Gmail

Gmail (Google Mail) is Google's web-based email. When you first setup the phone, Gmail is configured. Depending on the synchronization settings, Gmail is automatically synchronized with your Gmail account.

### Signing into Gmail

1. From the Home screen, tap  →  (Gmail).



---

**Note:** You must sign in to your Gmail account in order to access features such as Gmail and Play Store.


---

2. Tap **New** if you do not have a Google account.  
– or –  
Tap **Existing** if you have a Google account.  
The Inbox loads conversations and email.



### Opening Gmail

1. From the Home screen, tap  →  (Gmail).
2. Tap an existing email message.




## Refreshing Gmail

- From within the Gmail message list, tap  (Refresh) at the bottom of the screen to refresh the screen, send and receive new emails, and synchronize your email with the Gmail account.

## Other Gmail Options

1. From the main Gmail screen, tap  (Labels) at the bottom of the screen to set up and manage Labels for your Gmail messages.
2. From the main Gmail screen, tap  (Search) at the bottom of the screen to search through your Gmail messages.



## Composing a Gmail Message

1. From the Home screen, tap  →  (Gmail).
2. From the Gmail Inbox, tap  (Compose) at the bottom of the screen to create a new message.
3. Enter the recipients Email address in the **To** field.

---

**Tip:** Separate multiple recipient email addresses with a comma.

---




4. Press  and select **Add Cc/Bcc** to add a carbon or blind copy.
5. Enter the subject of this message in the **Subject** field.
6. Tap the **Compose Mail** field and begin composing your message.
7. Once complete, tap  (Send).

## Viewing a Gmail Message

1. From the Gmail Inbox, tap a message to view the following options located at the bottom of the screen:
  - **Archive**  : archives the selected Email.
  - **Delete**  : deletes the currently selected Email.
  - **Labels**  : assigns a label to the current Email.
  - **Mark as Unread**  : tags the current message as unread and returns you to the Google Mail Inbox.
  - **Newer**: swiping to the right displays newer Emails.
  - **Older**: swiping to the left displays older Emails.
2. Press  to select one of the following additional options:
  - **Mark important**: assigns the current email an important status.

- **Mute:** mutes the conversation.
- **Report spam:** reports the Email message as spam.
- **Report phishing:** reports the Email message as a phishing email attempt.
- **Settings:** allows you to configure the General, or Notification settings.
- **Send feedback:** sends feedback to Google.
- **Help:** launches the browser and displays Google Mobile Help information.

### Creating an Additional Gmail Account

1. From the Home screen, tap  →  (Gmail).
2. Press  and then tap **Settings** → **ADD ACCOUNT** and follow the same steps as referenced in the previous section. For more information, refer to *"Signing into Gmail"* on page 124.



## Talk

Google Talk™ is a free Windows and web-based application for instant messaging offered by Google. Conversation logs are automatically saved to a Chats area in your Gmail account. This allows you to search a chat log and store them in your Gmail accounts.

---

**Note:** Before using this application, you must first have an active Gmail account available and be currently logged in.

---

1. From the Home screen, tap  →  (Talk).

---

**Note:** If you are not already logged into Google, refer to the instructions for signing in on page 124.

---

2. Begin using Google Talk.



---

**Note:** The Network confirms your login and processes. This could take up to 5 minutes to complete.

---




## Google+


Google+ makes messaging and sharing with your friends a lot easier. You can set up Circles of friends, visit the Stream to get updates from your Circles, use Messenger for fast messaging with everyone in your Circles, or use Instant Upload to automatically upload videos and photos to your own private album on Google+.

1. Sign on to your Google account. For more information, refer to *"Creating a New Google Account"* on page 12.
2. From the Home screen, tap  →  (Google+).
3. Select the account you want to use to sign in to Google+.  
– or –  
Tap **Add account** to create another account.
4. Follow the on-screen instructions to use Google+.
5. Visit [www.google.com/mobile/+](http://www.google.com/mobile/+) for more information.

## Messenger

Messenger allows you to bring groups of friends together into a simple group conversation. When you get a new conversation in Messenger, Google+ sends an update to your phone.




1. Sign on to your Google account. For more information, refer to *"Creating a New Google Account"* on page 12.
2. From the Home screen, tap  →  (Messenger).  
– or –  
From the Google+ application, select **Messenger**.
3. Select the account you want to use to sign in to Google+.  
– or –  
Tap **Add account** to create another account.
4. When prompted, configure the Sync contacts parameter (Sync contacts or Don't sync) and tap **Continue**.
5. When prompted, configure the Instant Upload parameters as desired and tap **DONE**.
6. Follow any on-screen setup instructions.
7. At the **Messenger** screen, tap  to start a new message.

8. In the upper text field, enter a name, email address, or circle.
9. In the bottom message field, enter a message then tap .
10. From the **Messenger** screen, tap **Learn more** for more detailed information.

## ChatON

ChatON provides a global mobile communication service where you can chat with more than two “buddies” via a group chat. Share things such as pictures, videos, animation messages (Scribbles), audio, Contacts, Calendar entries, and Location information.

For more information, visit: <https://web.samsungchaton.com>.

1. From the Home screen, tap  → ChatON .
2. Tap **Sign in** to sync ChatOn with your Samsung account, which lets you use the same data on all devices connected to the account, or tap **Skip**.
3. Enter your name and tap .
4. Follow the on-screen instructions to add a buddy and begin your chat session.



## Section 8: Multimedia

---

This section explains how to use the multimedia features of your phone, including the Camera/Camcorder and Music Player, and how to manage your photos, images and sounds. You can take photographs and shoot video by using the built-in camera functionality. Your camera produces photos in JPEG format.

---

**Important!** Do not take photos of people without their permission.  
Do not take photos in places where cameras are not allowed.  
Do not take photos in places where you may interfere with another person's privacy.

---

---

**Note:** An SD card is not needed to take pictures or shoot video as there is already built-in storage.

---




### Assigning the Default Storage Location

If you have inserted a microSD memory card in the phone, you can assign the default storage location as phone or memory card.

---

**Important!** It is recommended that you verify this location or change it before initiating the use of the camera or camcorder features.


---

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Camera).
2. From the viewfinder screen, tap  (Settings) and scroll down to the **Storage** entry.
3. Tap this entry and select the desired default storage location for newly taken pictures or videos. Choose **Phone** or **Memory card**.

---

**Note:** It is recommended that you set the option to **Memory card** in order to save internal memory space on the phone for applications and other requirements.



---

4. Press  to return to the Home screen.

## Using the Camera

### Taking Photos

Taking pictures with your device's built-in camera is as simple as choosing a subject, pointing the camera, then pressing the camera key.


1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Camera).
2. Using the device's main display screen as a viewfinder, adjust the image by aiming the camera at the subject.

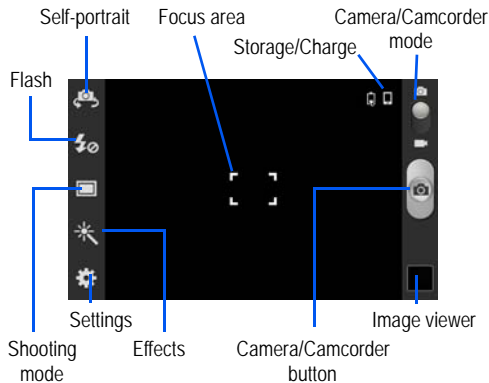
---

**Note:** Use the Up and Down volume keys or Pinch the screen to zoom in or out.

---

3. If desired, before taking the photo, use icons on the screen to access various camera options and settings.
4. You can also tap the screen to move the focus to a desired area of interest.

5. Press  (Camera key) until the shutter sounds. The picture is automatically stored in your designated storage location (page 129). If no memory card is installed, all pictures are stored on the Phone. For more information, refer to “Camera Options” on page 131.



## Camera Options

Options are represented by icons across both sides of the screen.

The following shortcuts are available for the camera:

---

**Note:** The options disappear after a few seconds. Tap the screen to display the tab, then touch the tab to view these options.

---



**Focus area:** displays the area of the image used as the main focus area.



**Self portrait:** allows you to set the front camera so you can take pictures of yourself or video chat.



**Flash:** allows you to set the flash options to Off, On, or Auto flash.



**Shooting mode:** allows you to set the shooting mode to one of the following:

- **Single shot:** takes a single photo and view it before returning to the shooting mode.
- **Continuous:** when activated, a continuous series of pictures are taken. Turn **Best photo** option either on or off. Select the best images and tap **Done**.
- **Panorama:** takes a landscape photo by taking an initial photo and then adding additional images to itself. The guide box lets you view the area where the second part of the panoramic picture should fall within.
- **Buddy photo share:** uses face recognition from pictures in your contacts to send your friends or family pictures of themselves.
- **Smile shot:** the camera focuses on the face of your subject. Once the camera detects the person's smile, it takes the picture.
- **Cartoon:** gives your photo a cartoon look.



**Effects:** allows you to change the color tone or apply special effects to the photo. Options include: No effect, Black and white, Sepia, and Negative.



### **Settings:**

**Edit shortcuts:** allows you to set shortcut icons for the settings that you use the most.

**GPS tag:** allows you to turn GPS On or Off (also known as Geotagging). The location of where the picture is taken is attached to the picture. (Only available in Camera mode.)

**Self-portrait:** allows you to set the front camera so you can take pictures of yourself or video chat.

**Flash:** allows you to set the flash options to Off, On, or Auto flash.

**Shooting mode:** allows you to set the shooting mode. For more information, see Shooting mode description.

**Effects:** allows you to change the color tone or apply special effects to the photo. Options include: No effect, Black and white, Sepia, and Negative.

**Scene mode:** allows you to set the Scene to help take the best pictures possible. Options include None, Portrait, Landscape, Sports, Party/Indoor, Beach/Snow, Sunset, Dawn, Autumn colour, Text, Candlelight, Firework, Backlight, and Night. Helpful tips are shown for each scene mode at the bottom of the display screen.

**Exposure value:** allows you to adjust the brightness level by moving the slider.

**Focus mode:** allows you to set this option to Auto focus or Macro. Use Macro for close-ups, Auto focus for all other focal situations.

**Timer:** allows you to set a timer for how long to wait before taking a picture. Options include: Off, 2 sec, 5 sec, and 10 sec.

**Resolution:** allows you to set the image size: 5M (2560x1920), W4M (2560x1536), 3.2M (2048x1536), W2.4M (2048x1232), or 0.3M (640x480).



### Settings (continued):

**White balance:** allows you to set this option to one of the following choices: Auto, Daylight, Cloudy, Incandescent, or Fluorescent.

**ISO:** ISO determines how sensitive the light meter is on your digital camera. Choose from Auto, 100, 200, or 400. Use a lower ISO number to make your camera less sensitive to light, a higher ISO number to take photos with less light, or Auto to let the camera automatically adjust the ISO for each of your shots

**Metering:** allows you to set how the camera measures or meters the light source: Matrix, Centre-weighted, or Spot.

**Guidelines:** allows you to turn the guidelines On or Off.

**Image quality:** allows you to set the image quality to: Superfine, Fine, or Normal.

**Storage:** allows you to configure the default storage location for images or videos as either Phone or Memory card (if inserted).

**Reset:** allows you to reset all camera or camcorder settings to the default values.



**Image viewer:** allows you to access the Image viewer and the various viewing options for a selected picture. The last picture you took, will be displayed as a thumbnail in the Image viewer icon.



**Camera button:** takes a photo when pressed in Camera mode.



**Camera / Camcorder Mode:** allows you to take a photo in various modes. Once you change the mode, the corresponding indicator appears at the top left of the display. Slide the button up for Camera, or down for Camcorder.



**Storage location/Connection Status:** indicates the device is connected to an adapter and the current storage location for images (Phone or Memory card) on the device.

## *Pictures and Videos Image Viewer Options*

After you take a photo or record a video, you can access various options.



### *Photo viewing options*

1. Tap a thumbnail to view the picture.


---

**Note:** If no control icons are displayed on the screen in addition to the picture, tap anywhere on the screen to display them.

---

2. The following options are available at the top of the screen:
  - **Share via**  : allows you to share the picture via ChatON, Flipboard, Picasa, Google+, Bluetooth, Wi-Fi Direct, Messaging, Gmail, and Email.
  - **Slideshow**  : appears in Landscape mode, allows you to see your photos in a slideshow.

- **Delete**  : appears in Landscape mode, allows you to delete the current picture.

3. Press  for additional options such as:
  - **Delete**: appears in Portrait mode, allows you to delete the current picture.
  - **Face tag**: allows you to activate/deactivate face recognition for use with external social media applications.
  - **Copy to clipboard** allows you to copy one or more pictures to a different folder.
  - **Rotate left**: allows you to rotate the view of the current image in a counterclockwise direction.
  - **Rotate right**: allows you to rotate the view of the current image in a clockwise direction.
  - **Crop**: provides an on-screen box that allows you to crop the current picture. Tap **Done** to update the image with the new dimensions or tap **Cancel** to ignore any changes.
  - **Edit**: launches the Photo Editor application. The Photo Editor application can be downloaded from the Play Store.
  - **Set as**: allows you to assign the current image as a Contact photo, Home screen, Lock screen, or Home and lock screens.



- **Buddy photo share:** allows you to share the current image with active ChatON buddies.
- **Print:** allows you to print the current image on a compatible Samsung printer.
- **Rename:** allows you to rename the current file.
- **Scan for nearby devices:** scans for nearby DLNA-compliant devices that can receive or display the current image.
- **Details:** files details such as Title, Time, Width, Height, Orientation, File Size, and Path.

### Video viewing options

---






**Note:** If no control icons are displayed on the screen in addition to the picture, tap anywhere on the screen to display them.


---

1. Tap a video to select it.
2. Tap  to play the video.
3. Press  for additional options.

### Camera Gallery Options




The Gallery is where you can access the Gallery of stored camera images.

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Gallery).
2. Select a folder location (e.g., Camera) and tap an image to open it.
  - or –
  - Touch and hold an image to place a box around the file and select multiple files.
  - or –
  - Tap the camera icon to begin taking pictures that are placed in this folder.
  - or –
3. Tap an on-screen image and use any of the following image menu options:
  - **Share via**  : allows you to share the picture via ChatON, Flipboard, Picasa, Google+, Bluetooth, Wi-Fi Direct, Messaging, Gmail, or Email.
  - **Slideshow**  : appears in Landscape mode, allows you to see your videos in a slideshow.
  - **Delete**  : appears in Landscape mode, allows you to delete the current video.



4. Press  for additional options such as:
- **Delete:** appears in Portrait mode, allows you to delete the current video.
  - **Face tag:** allows you to activate/deactivate face recognition for use with external social media applications.
  - **Copy to clipboard** allows you to copy one or more pictures to a different folder.
  - **Rotate left:** allows you to rotate the view of the current image in a counterclockwise direction.
  - **Rotate right:** allows you to rotate the view of the current image in a clockwise direction.
  - **Crop:** provides an on-screen box that allows you to crop the current picture. Tap **Done** to update the image with the new dimensions or tap **Cancel** to ignore any changes.
  - **Edit:** launches the Photo Editor application. The Photo Editor application can be downloaded from the Play Store.
  - **Set as:** allows you to assign the current image as a Contact photo, Home screen, Lock screen, or Home and lock screens.
  - **Buddy photo share:** allows you to share the current image with active ChatON buddies.

- **Print:** allows you to print the current image on a compatible Samsung printer.
- **Rename:** allows you to rename the current file.
- **Scan for nearby devices:** scans for nearby DLNA-compliant devices that can receive or display the current image.
- **Details:** files details such as Title, Time, Width, Height, Orientation, File Size, and Path.


### *Assigning an Image as a Contact Photo*

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Gallery).
2. Select a folder location and tap a file to open it.
3. With the image displayed, press  and then tap **Set as** → **Contact photo**.
4. Tap a contact to make a selection.
5. Use the on-screen crop the image by dragging it around or out from its corners.
6. Tap **Done** to store the new image.

### *Assigning an Image as a Wallpaper*

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Gallery).
2. Select a folder location and tap a file to open it.



3. With the image displayed, press  and then tap **Set as**.
4. Select one of the these options:
  - **Home screen** assigns the current image to the home screen background. This image is spread across all available screens.
  - **Lock screen** assigns the selected image to the background for the lock screen.
  - **Home and lock screens** assigns the current image to both the Home screen and Lock screens.
5. Touch and drag the crop box anywhere on the picture. Touch and drag the sides of the crop box to zoom in or out to create a cropped area.
6. Tap **Done** to assign the wallpaper image.
  - or –
  - Tap **Cancel** to stop without updating the wallpaper image.

## Using the Camcorder



In addition to taking photos, the camera also doubles as a camcorder that also allows you to record, view, and send high definition videos.

### *Shooting Video*

---

**Tip:** When shooting video in direct sunlight or in bright conditions, it is recommended that you provide your subject with sufficient light by having the light source behind you.

---





1. From the Home screen, tap  (**Apps**) →  (**Camera**).
2. Tap and slide the Camera mode button down to **Camcorder Mode**.
3. Using the device's main display screen as a viewfinder, adjust the image by aiming the camcorder at the subject.

---

**Note:** Use either the Up and Down volume keys or spread/pinch the screen to zoom in or out.

---

4. Tap the Video key (  ) to begin shooting video. The red light will blink while recording.

5. Tap the Stop key () to stop the recording and save the video file to your Camera folder.  
– or –  
Tap the Pause key () to pause the recording.
6. Once the file has been saved, tap the image viewer, then tap  to play your video for review.
7. Press  to return to the viewer.

---

**Note:** Zooming is not supported while recording Full HD video. Adjust to a lower resolution to regain this functionality.

---

## Camcorder Options

You can change options using your keypad in capture mode. The following short cuts are available:



**Self portrait:** allows you to activate the front facing camera so you can take videos of yourself or video chat.



**Flash:** allows you to set the flash options to Off or On. When you set the flash to On, it stays on continually while you are taking a video.



**Recording mode:** allows you to set the recording mode to: Normal, which is limited only by available space on the destination location, or Limit for MMS, which is limited by MMS size restrictions.



**Effects:** allows you to change the color tone or apply special effects to the video. Options include: No effect, Black and white, Sepia, and Negative.



## Settings:

**Edit shortcuts:** allows you to set shortcut icons for the settings that you use the most.

**Self-recording:** allows you to set the front camera so you can take videos of yourself or video chat.

**Flash:** allows you to set the flash options to Off or On. When you set the flash to On, it stays on continually while you are taking a video.

**Recording mode:** allows you to set the recording mode:

- **Normal:** is limited only by available space on the destination location.
- **Limit for MMS:** is limited by MMS size restrictions.

**Effects:** allows you to change the color tone or apply special effects to the video. Options include: No effect, Black and white, Sepia, and Negative.

**Exposure value:** allows you to adjust the brightness level by moving the slider.

**Timer:** allows you to set a timer for how long to wait before taking a video. Options include: Off, 2 sec, 5 sec, and 10 sec.



## Settings (continued):

**Resolution:** allows you to set the image size to either: 1280x720, 720x480, 640x480, or 320x240.

**White balance:** allows you to set this option to one of the following choices: Auto, Daylight, Cloudy, Incandescent, or Fluorescent.

**Guidelines:** allows you to turn the guidelines On or Off.

**Video quality:** allows you to set the image quality to: Superfine, Fine, or Normal.

**Storage:** allows you to configure the default storage location for images or videos as either Phone or Memory card (if inserted).

**Reset:** allows you to reset all camera or camcorder settings to the default values.



**Image viewer:** allows you to access the Image viewer and the various viewing options for a selected video. Image viewer options are described in the following section. The last video you took, will be displayed as a thumbnail in the Image viewer icon.



**Camcorder button:** shoots or stops video recording when pressed in Camcorder mode.






**Camera / Camcorder Mode:** allows you to take a photo in various modes. Once you change the mode, the corresponding indicator appears at the top left of the display. Slide the button up for Camera mode or down for Camcorder mode.



**Storage location/Connection Status:** indicates the device is connected to an adapter and the current storage location for videos (Phone or Memory card) on the device.


## Accessing Videos

When you shoot a video, the file is saved in the Camera folder. You can view your videos immediately or view them anytime in the Camera folder.

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Gallery).
2. Select a folder location and tap a video icon then tap  to begin video playback.  
– or –

Tap a video icon from the main Gallery to display the following video menu context options:

- **Share via**  : allows you to share the video via ChatON, Picasa, Google+, Bluetooth, Wi-Fi Direct, Messaging, YouTube, Gmail, and Email.
- **Slideshow**  appears in Landscape mode and allows you to see your video in a slideshow.
- **Delete**  appears in Landscape mode and allows you to delete the current video.

3. Press  for additional options such as:
  - **Delete:** appears in Portrait mode, allows you to delete the current video.
  - **Rename:** allows you to rename one or more video files.
  - **Details:** displays video file information.

## The Gallery



The Gallery is where you view photos and play back videos.

---

**Note:** If the phone displays a memory full message when accessing the Gallery, remove some of the media files from their folders.

---

### Opening the Gallery

- From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Gallery). For more information, refer to “Camera Gallery Options” on page 135.



---

**Note:** If you stored your files in folders (directories) on the storage card, Gallery displays these folders as separate albums. The top left album contains all the pictures in the storage card.




---

## Using the Video Player

The Video Player application plays video files stored on the SD card.

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Video Player). A list of videos sorted on the SD card displays in the Video list.
2. Tap a video file to begin viewing.

### Sharing Videos

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Video Player).
2. Press  and then tap **Share via**.
3. Select either individual videos or tap **Select all**.
4. Tap **Done** to complete the process or **Cancel** to quit.
5. Select a sharing option. Choose from: Bluetooth, ChatON, Email, Gmail, Google+, Messaging, Picasa, Wi-Fi Direct, or YouTube.

## Play Movies



This application allows you to connect to the Play Store, download a movie and then watch it instantly.

Choose from thousands of movies, including new releases and HD titles in the Play Store and stream them instantly on your Android device.

Movies, previously rented via the Play Store are automatically added to your My Movies library across your devices.



Learn more about Google Play Movies at:

<http://play.google.com/about/movies>.


1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Play Movies).
2. Log on to your Google account if you have not already done so.
3. Tap the **MOVIES** tab to rent and view movies.
4. Tap the **PERSONAL VIDEOS** tab to view movies you have on your device or memory card.

## Play Music

With Google Play Music, you can play music that you have added to your music file as well as any music you copied from your PC. While offline, you can listen to music you have copied from your PC.




1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Play Music).

All music on your device and external SD card is displayed, including Music folders that contain multiple songs.




2. Swipe left or right to browse through your new and available music. Music, albums, and artists are grouped into categories.
3. Tap an album or song to open it and begin playback.
4. Return to the Library screen from most other screens in the Music application by tapping the Music application icon  (Music notification icon) at the top-left of the Application bar.

### Changing Library View




You can change the way you view the contents of your library.

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Play Music).
2. While in a selection or screen, tap  (near the top-left of the Application bar) and then scroll left or right to access the various tabs.
3. Available tabs include: **PLAYLISTS**, **RECENT**, **ARTISTS**, **ALBUMS**, **SONGS**, or **GENRES**.

### *Searching for Music in Your Library*

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Play Music).
2. Tap  (Search) to search through your available songs.
3. Type the name of an artist, album, song, or playlist. Matching songs are displayed in a list below the search box.
4. Tap a matching song to play it, tap a matching album, artist or playlist to view a list of songs.

### *Changing Music Settings*

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Play Music).
2. Press  and then make a selection.



- **Settings:** Provides details of the Open source licenses and Music version.
- **Help:** Displays application help information.

### *Listening to Music*

You can listen to music by using your device's built-in speaker, through a wired headset, or through a wireless Bluetooth stereo headset.

Press the volume keys on the side of the device to change the volume. Pressing a volume key also activates the on-screen volume control; touch and drag on the scale to set volume.

### *Playing Music*

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Play Music).

2. Tap a song in your library to listen to it.

The **Now playing** screen opens and the song you touched or the first song in the album or playlist starts to play. The tracks in the current list play in order until you reach the end of the list (unless you choose a repeat option). Otherwise, playback stops only if you stop it, even when you switch applications.


---

**Note:** If you navigate away from the **Now playing** screen in the Music application, the Now Playing bar appears at the bottom of the screen.

---



## Displaying the Now Playing Screen


If you navigate away from the **Now playing** screen, to return to the **Now playing** screen from other Music screens:

- Tap the name of the current song in the Now Playing bar.
  - or –
- In a single motion, touch and drag  (Music notification icon) down from the System bar and tap the song title from the Notifications area. You can also pause and resume playback and skip to the next or previous song in the panel. For more information, refer to “Notification Bar” on page 26.

## Tab Options




There are various options available from the various tabs:

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Play Music).




2. Select one of the following tabs and tap  to access an available option.
  - **PLAYLISTS:** Add to queue, Rename, or Delete.
  - **RECENT:** to display the most recently played songs and albums.
  - **ARTISTS:** Add to queue, Add to playlist, or Shop for artist.
  - **ALBUMS:** Add to queue, Add to playlist, More by artist, or Shop for artist.
  - **SONGS:** Add to queue, Add to playlist, Shop for artist, or Delete.
  - **GENRES:** Add to queue.

## Options While Playing a Song

When you play a song, the **Now playing** screen displays. There are various options and controls available while a song is playing:

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Play Music).
2. Tap an album or song.
3. From the Now playing screen, press  (Menu) to display the following options:



- **Equalizer:** applies selected equalizer features such as: FX booster, Bass boost, and 3D effect.
  - **Clear queue:** clears the current queue.
  - **Save queue:** stores the current queue.
  - **Settings:** Allows you to view and assign various music settings, and view different application-specific information.
  - **Help:** Provides an on-screen series of related help topics.
4. Tap  → **Add to playlist** to add the song to a playlist.  
– or –  
Tap  →  → **Add to playlist** to add the song to a playlist.

The **Now playing** screen contains several buttons that you can tap to control the playback of songs, albums, and playlists:



Tap to go back to the previous song. Touch and hold to scan backward through the current song.



Tap to resume playback.




Tap to pause playback.




Tap to advance to the next song. Touch and hold to scan forward through the current song.




When Shuffle mode is enabled via **Show Options**, songs play in random order. When disabled (as shown), songs play in the order they appear in List view. Also visible when  is tapped.






When Shuffle mode is enabled via **Show Options**, songs play in random order. When enabled (as shown), songs play in random order. Also visible when  is tapped.




Tap to repeat the current song, repeat all songs, or disable repeat mode. Also visible when  is tapped.





### Creating a Playlist

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Play Music).



2. Tap the **PLAYLISTS** tab, Press  and tap **New playlist** → **Playlist name** field to enter a name for the playlist.
3. Tap **OK** to save the new playlist.

2. Display the **PLAYLISTS** library view.
3. Tap  next to a playlist title and tap **Delete** → **OK**.



### *Adding Songs to Playlists*

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Play Music).
2. Tap an album or song list and play a song.
3. Tap  →  adjacent to the song name and select **Add to playlist**.
4. Select the desired target playlist.

### *Playing a Playlist*



1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Play Music).
2. Select the **PLAYLISTS** tab.
3. Tap a playlist title.
4. Tap the first song on the playlist.

### *Deleting a Playlist*

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Play Music).

## Music Player

### Playing Music

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Music Player). Music player tips display.
2. Tap a library category tab to select the music category: **All**, **Playlists**, **Albums**, **Artists**, **Music square**, or **Folders**.
3. Scroll through the list and tap an entry to begin playback.
4. Use any of the following Music Player controls:



Pause the song.



Start the song after pausing.



Press and hold to rewind the song. Tap to go to previous song.



Press and hold to fast-forward the song. Tap to go to next song.



Volume control.



Plays the entire song list once.



Replays the current list when the list ends.



Repeats the currently playing song.



Shuffles the current list of songs randomly.



Songs play in order and are not shuffled.



Provides access to the Music square.



Lists the current playlist songs.





Displays the current song in the player window.




Provides access to the Equalizer.

### Making a Song a Phone Ringtone

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Music Player).
2. Tap a library category tab.
3. Touch and hold a song from the list to reveal the on-screen context menu.
4. Tap **Set as** → **Phone ringtone**.




### Music Player Options

The Music Player Settings menu allows you to set preferences for the music player such as whether you want the music to play in the background, sound effects, and how the music menu displays.

- With the music player application displayed and playing a song, press  and select one of the following options:
  - **Add to quick list:** adds the current music file to the Quick list.
  - **Via Bluetooth:** plays the music through a Bluetooth stereo headset.
  - **Share via:** shares a music file via Bluetooth, Email, Gmail, Messaging, or Wi-Fi Direct.
  - **Add to playlist:** allows you to add the current music file to a selected playlist.
  - **Set as:** sets this song as a Phone ringtone, Caller ringtone, or Alarm tone.
  - **Scan for nearby devices:** allows you to look for DLNA - compliant devices used to control streaming media.
  - **Settings:** allows you to set the SoundAlive, Play speed, Music menu, Lyrics, and Music auto off settings.
  - **Details:** displays details about the selected music.
  - **End:** closes the application.

## Music Player Settings

The Music Player Settings menu allows you to set preferences for the music player such as whether you want the music to play in the background, sound effects, and how the music menu displays.




1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Music Player).
2. Press  → Settings.
3. Select one of the following settings:
  - **SoundAlive:** set a type of equalization such as Normal, Pop, Rock, Dance, Jazz, Classic, etc.
  - **Play speed:** set the play speed anywhere between 0.5X and 2.0X using the slider.
  - **Music menu:** this menu allows you to select which categories you want to display. Choices are: Albums, Artists, Genres, Music square, Folders, Composers, Years, Most played, Recently played, or Recently added. Tap each item that you want to display in the Music menu.
  - **Lyrics:** when activated, the lyrics of the song are displayed if available.

- **Music auto off:** when activated, music will automatically turn off after a set interval.




## Using Playlists

Playlists are used to assign music files into groups for playback. These Playlists can be created using the Music player on this device, or using a third-party application (such as Windows Media Player) and downloading those files to an SD card inserted into the device.

### Creating a Playlist

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Music Player).
2. Tap the **Playlists** tab.
3. Press  and then tap **Create playlist**.
4. Type a name for the playlist, then tap **OK**.

### Adding Music to a Playlist

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Music Player).
2. Tap the **Playlists** tab.
3. Tap a playlist.
4. Tap  (**Add music**). This option is available within user-created playlists.



---

**Note:** If a playlist is empty, add a song by touching a holding a song name from the main screen to open the context menu. Select **Add to playlist** and choose the playlist.

---

5. Tap a music file, or tap **Select all** to add all the music tracks to this playlist then tap **Done**.

### Removing Music from a Playlist

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Music Player).
2. Tap the **Playlists** tab.
3. Tap a playlist.
4. Touch and hold a song to reveal the on-screen context menu.
5. Tap **Remove**.



## Editing a Playlist

Besides adding and removing music files in a playlist, you can also share, delete, or rename the playlist.

---

**Note:** Only those playlist you have created can be edited.  
Default playlists can not be renamed.

---

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Music Player).
2. Tap the **Playlists** tab.
3. Touch and hold a playlist entry to reveal the on-screen context menu.
4. Tap **Edit title**.
5. Enter a new name for this playlist and tap **OK**.



## Transferring Music Files

Music files can be downloaded to the phone using one of two methods:

1. Downloaded to the device from the Play Store.  
Music files are directly stored on your phone.
2. Downloaded to the phone via a direct USB connection.  
Music files are stored into a Music folder on the SD card.




For more information, refer to “PC Communication with the SD card” on page 49.

## Removing Music Files

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Music Player).
2. Tap a library category tab.
3. Touch and hold a song to reveal the on-screen context menu.
4. Tap **Delete** → **OK**. The music file(s) is deleted.

## YouTube

YouTube is a video sharing website on which users can upload and share videos, and view them in MPEG-4 format.

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (YouTube).
2. When the screen loads you can begin searching and viewing posted videos.
3. Press  → **Settings** → **General** → **High quality on mobile** if you prefer high quality output.

## Section 9: Applications and Development

---

This section contains a description of each application that is available in the Applications Menu, its function, and how to navigate through that particular application. If the application is already described in another section of this user manual, then a cross reference to that particular section is provided.

---

**Note:** This manual only addresses applications that have been loaded on your device as of the date of purchase. Information concerning third party applications that you choose to download from the Google Play Store or otherwise should be obtained from the application provider directly.

---

---

**Tip:** To open applications quickly, add the icons of frequently-used applications to one of the Home screens. For more information, refer to *"Customizing the Screens"* on page 42.

You can also add an application icon as a Primary Shortcut that will display on all Home screens. If you add an application as a primary shortcut, the application icon will not be displayed in the Applications menu.



---

### Applications

The Applications list provides quick access to all the available applications on the phone.

### Calculator

Using this feature allows you to use your device as a calculator. The calculator provides the basic arithmetic functions; addition, subtraction, multiplication, and division. You can also use this as a scientific calculator.

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Calculator).
2. Enter the first number using the numeric keys.
3. Enter the operation for your calculation by tapping the **Plus**, **Minus**, **Multiplication**, or **Division** key.
4. Enter the next number.
5. To view the result, tap the = (**equals**) key.
6. Repeat steps 1 to 4 as many times as required.

---

**Note:** Place the screen in Landscape mode to reveal additional scientific functions.

---



## Camera

Use your 5.0 megapixel camera feature to produce photos in a JPEG format. The Camcorder shoots High Definition video in an MP4 format.

---

**Note:** A microSD card is no longer necessary before you take pictures or shoot video.  
It is recommended that you confirm your default storage location for images and videos.

---

- From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Camera).



For more information, refer to *"Using the Camera"* on page 130.

## ChatON

With the ChatON application, you can interact with friends and family with text, images, hand-written notes and video shared instantly. You can chat in groups, while a Web client will allow the easy sharing of content and conversations between your phone and PC. For more information, refer to *"ChatON"* on page 128.

## Chrome



The Google Chrome app allows you to use the Google Chrome Web browser on your device.

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Chrome).
2. Read the Google Chrome Terms of Service and tap **Accept and Continue**.
3. If you have an existing Chrome account, tap **Sign in** to bring your open tabs, bookmarks, and omnibox data from your computer to your phone, otherwise tap **No thanks**.
4. Follow the on-screen instructions to use Google Chrome.






## Clock

Here you can set an Alarm, configure and view the World clock, use a Stopwatch, set a Timer, or use a Desk Clock. The applications display in a tabular format and are quickly accessed with the touch of a finger.


- From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Clock).

### Setting an Alarm


1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Clock).
2. Tap  (Create alarm).
3. Use the up and down arrows to adjust the hour and minutes. Tap **AM** or **PM** to change to the opposite setting (toggles depending on which was last selected).
4. Tap the **Alarm repeat** field and touch the number of times you want this alarm to repeat. Selections are: day blocks or **Repeat Weekly**. Selected day blocks turn blue when active.
5. Tap the **Alarm type** field and select one of the following: **Melody**, **Vibration**, **Vibration and melody**, or **Briefing**.
6. Tap **More** to access additional alarm settings.
7. Slide the slider bar left or right in the **Alarm volume** field to decrease or increase the alarm volume. A sample of the volume level plays.
8. Tap the **Alarm tone** field and either select an available tone or select **Add** to use locate a sound to use as an alarm ringtone. Tap **OK** to activate the ringtone.
9. Move the **Location alarm** slider to the right to activate the feature where the alarm is only activated when you are located at a previously designated location. Use either the on-screen map or enter a location and select **Done**.
10. Move the **Snooze** slider to the right to activate the feature. Tap the field to assign a **Interval** time (3 minutes, 5 minutes, 10 minutes, 15 minutes, or 30 minutes) and **Repeat** (1 time, 2 times, 3 times, 5 times, and 10 times).
  - **Interval** indicates the length of time the alarm will remain silent between alarm notifications (snooze time).
  - **Repeat** indicates the numbers of snooze sessions that are assigned to this alarm. How many times will the snooze silence the alarm.

11. Move the **Smart alarm** slider to the right to activate this feature which slowly increases screen brightness and the volume of nature tones to simulate dawn breaking. Tap the field to assign a interval time (3 min, 5 min, 10 min, 15 min, or 30 min) and nature tone (Fairy fountain, Birdsong by the lake, Sparkling mist, The secret forest, Serenity, or Gentle spring rain).
  - **Interval** category describes the length of time the alarm will remain silent between alarm notifications (snooze time).
  - **Tone** category provides one of several nature sounds that are used as the alarm tone.
12. Tap the **Name** field and enter a name for this Alarm.
13. Tap **Save** to store the new alarm event.



### Turning Off an Alarm

- To stop an alarm when it sounds, touch and slide  to any direction.

### Setting the Snooze Feature



- To activate the Snooze feature after an alarm sounds, touch and slide  to any direction. Snooze must first be set in the alarm settings.

### Deleting an Existing Alarm

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Clock).
2. Touch and hold an on-screen alarm event.
3. Tap **Delete**.

### World Clock

This feature allows you to find out what time it is another part of world.



1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Clock).
2. Tap the **World Clock** tab.
3. Tap **Add city** then scroll and select the desired city, or tap in the search field to locate a city.

To assign DST (Daylight Savings Time) settings:



1. Locate a desired city from the World Clock list.
2. Touch and hold a city and select **DST settings**.
3. Select a DST setting (Automatic, Off, or 1 hour).  
If Daylight Savings Time is selected, a sun symbol appears next to the World Clock city listing.

## Stopwatch

This feature allows you to capture elapsed time while letting the stopwatch keep running.

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Clock) → **Stopwatch** tab.
2. Tap **Start** to start the stopwatch counter.
3. Tap **Lap** to begin the lap time counter.
4. Tap **Stop** to stop the counter.
5. Tap **Restart** to restart the lap counter. You can have multiple lap times.
6. Tap **Reset** to reset the counter.



## Setting a Timer

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Clock) → **Timer** tab.
2. Tap the **Hours**, **Minutes**, or **Seconds** field and use the on-screen keypad to enter the hours, minutes, and seconds.
3. Tap **Start** to start the timer. The timer plays an alarm at the end of the countdown.
4. Tap **Stop** to stop the timer or **Reset** to reset the timer and start over.

5. Tap **Restart** to resume the timer counter.



## Configuring a Desk Clock

This feature lets you activate an on-screen clock that can be viewed when the device is docked.

- From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Clock) → **Desk clock** tab.

## Contacts



The default storage location for saving phone numbers to your Contacts List is your phone's built-in memory.

- From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Contacts).

For more information, refer to “*Contacts List*” on page 82.



## Downloads

Provides quick access to tabs containing a list of your current downloaded files (Internet and Other).

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Downloads).
2. Tap an available file category tab (**Internet downloads** or **Other downloads**) and select the desired file.

## Email



Email enables you to review and create email using most email services. The device alerts you when you receive an email message.

- From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Email).

For more information, refer to *"Email"* on page 115.



## Flipboard

This application creates a personalized digital magazine out of everything being shared with you. Access news stories, personal feeds and other related material. Flip through your Facebook newsfeed, tweets from your Twitter account, photos from friends and much more.

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Flipboard).
2. Swipe up the screen, select some on-screen categories and tap **Done** to create a new profile.  
– or –  
Tap **Tap to Sign In** to log into your previously created profile.
3. Follow the on-screen instructions.

## Gallery



The Gallery is where you view photos and play back videos. For photos, you can also perform basic editing tasks, view a slideshow, set photos as wallpaper or caller image, and share as a picture message.

- From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Gallery).

For more information, refer to *"The Gallery"* on page 141.

## Gmail



Google Mail (Gmail) is a web-based email service. Gmail is configured when you first set up your phone. Depending on your synchronization settings, Gmail can automatically synchronize with your Gmail account on the web.


- From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Gmail).

For more information, refer to *"Using Gmail"* on page 124.

## Google



Use Google Search to search the Web.

- From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Search) and enter the search text.  
– or –

Tap  on the Google Search bar and say the search information.

## Google Settings

Google Settings provides shortcuts to your settings for Apps with Google+ Sign-in, Google+, Play games, Location, Maps & Latitude, Search, and Ads. All of these options are already accessible in other locations on the device, except Apps with Google+ Sign-In. This setting lets you manage the apps you've used to sign in and share information with your Google+ account.

- From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Google Settings).

## Google+



Google+ makes messaging and sharing with your friends a lot easier.

1. Sign on to your Google account. For more information, refer to *“Creating a New Google Account”* on page 12.
2. From the Home screen, tap  →  (Google+).

For more information, refer to *“Google+”* on page 127.

## Internet



Open the browser to start surfing the Web. The browser is fully optimized and comes with advanced functionality to enhance the Internet browsing feature on your phone.



- From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Internet).

For more information, refer to *“Web”* on page 177.

## Local

Local (formerly known as Google Places) displays company logos on a layer of Google Maps. When viewing an area you can quickly locate a business or person, find out more information about the business, see coupons, public responses, and more.

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Local).

2. Tap  (Search) and then use the **Search Maps** field to manually enter a desired place or choose from among the various categories. Matches are filtered by those closest to your current location.
3. Tap MAP VIEW to launch the related maps feature.
4. Press  and then tap **Add a search**. The functions adds additional search shortcuts to the places screen.



## Maps

Google Maps allow you to track your current location, view real-time traffic issues, and view detailed destination directions. There is also a search tool included to help you locate places of interest or a specific address. You can view locations on a vector or aerial map, or you can view locations at the street level.

---

**Important!** Before using Google Maps you must have an active data or Wi-Fi connection. The Maps application does not cover every country or city.

---

- From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Maps).

---

**Important!** For best results, it is recommended that you enable all of your location services. For more information, refer to “*Location Services*” on page 220.

---


### Enabling a Location source

Before you use Google Maps and find your location or search for places of interest, you must enable a location source. To enable the location source you must enable the wireless network, or enable the GPS satellites.

---

**Important!** The more location determining functions are enabled, the more accurate the determination will be of your position.

---

1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings → Location services**.
2. Tap **Use wireless networks** allows apps to use data from sources such as Wi-Fi and mobile networks to provide a better approximation of your current location.
3. Tap **Use GPS satellites** to enable the GPS satellite.



4. Tap **Location and Google search** to allow Google to use your location data to improve your search results and other services.

---


**Tip:** Enabling this feature allows you to locate places of interest at the street-level. However, this also requires a clear view of the sky and uses more battery power.

---

### Opening Maps




1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Maps).
2. Tap the My location button (upper-right) to find your location on the map with a blinking blue arrow.
3. Use the bottom row of buttons to access additional options:
  - **Search:** allows you to search for a place of interest.
  - **Directions:** displays navigation directions to a location from a starting point.

- **Local:** provides access to the places menu where you can quickly locate a business or person, find out more information about a business, see coupons, public responses, and more (page 157). Locate and tap one of the listed places (Restaurants, Cafes, Bars, Attractions, [user added searches], RECOMMENDATIONS, or MORE CATEGORIES.
- **Layers:** allows you to switch map views:
  - **Traffic:** (available only in selected areas) Real-time traffic conditions are displayed over roads as color-coded lines. Each color represents how fast the traffic is moving.
  - **Satellite:** Maps uses the same satellite data as Google Earth. Satellite images are not real-time. Google Earth acquires the best imagery available, most of which is approximately one to three years old.
  - **Terrain:** combines a topographical view of the area's terrain with the current map location.
  - **Transit Lines:** displays the overlapping transit lines on your map.
  - **Latitude:** allows you to see your friend's locations and share your location with them.

- **My Maps**: displays a list of your preferred maps.
  - **Bicycling**: displays the overlapping cycling trails on your map.
  - **Wikipedia**: displays any Wikipedia markers and info on your map.
  - **Restaurants**: displays nearby restaurants.
4. Press  and select one of the following options:
- **Clear Map**: allows you to remove all markings and layers from the map.
  - **Make available offline**: allows you to store map-related information locally on your device and access it even when the device is offline.
  - **Settings**: allows you to select the following additional options:
    - **Display**: allows you to enable/disable the Zoom Buttons, Scale Bar, and Bubble action.
    - **Offline and cache**: allows you to set options to pre-fetch map tiles when not using Wi-Fi and to clear the cache that holds the map tiles. Choose from: Automatic caching, Clear all map titles, or Clear My Places cache.
    - **Location settings**: lets you access and configure the location settings.
- **Labs**: this is a testing ground for experimental features that aren't ready for primetime. They may change, break or disappear at any time. Click on a Lab to enable or disable it.
  - **What's New**: provides access to the Play Store from where you can update the application manually.
  - **About**: displays general information about Google maps such as Version, Platform, Locale, Total data sent, Total data received, Free memory, etc.
  - **Feedback**: allows you to provide application feedback.
  - **Terms, Privacy & Notices**: displays the Terms and Conditions, Privacy Policy, or Legal Notices information. Select the desired information from the pop-up menu.
  - **Help**: provides help information.

## Memo

This feature allows you to create a memo.

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Memo).
2. Tap  (Create memo).

---

**Note:** If this is your first memo, you are automatically taken to the new memo screen.


---



3. Compose the memo.
4. Tap **Save**.

For more information, refer to *“Text Input Methods”* on page 68.

## Memo options

While viewing the list of Memos, press  and select one of the following options:

- **Search:** allows you to search within the current set of memos.
- **Delete:** allows you to delete one or more memos.
- **Print:** allows you to print one or more memos.
- **Share via:** allows you to send one or more memos at one time.



Select a memo and tap **Send** to deliver it via:  
Text only, Text file (.vnt), or S Note file (.snb).

- **Sync memo:** allows you to sync your memos to Google Docs or send individual memos.

## Messaging

This application allows you to use the Short Message Service (SMS) to send and receive short text messages to and from other mobile phones.



You can also use the Multi Media Service (MMS) to create multimedia messages to send and receive from other mobile phones.

- From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Messaging).

For more information, refer to *“Messages”* on page 102.

## Messenger

Messenger allows you to bring groups of friends together into a simple group conversation. When you get a new conversation in Messenger, Google+ sends an update to your phone.



1. Sign on to your Google account. For more information, refer to *“Creating a New Google Account”* on page 12.
2. From the Home screen, tap  →  (Messenger).  
– or –

From the Google+ application, select **Messenger**.

For more information, refer to *“Messenger”* on page 127.

## Music Player



This application allows you to play music files that you have stored on your microSD card. You can also create playlists.

- From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Music Player).

For more information, refer to “Music Player” on page 147.

## My Files

This application allows you to manage your sounds, images, videos, bluetooth files, Android files, and other data in one convenient location. This application allows you to launch the application associated with a file if it is already on your phone.

- From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (My Files).

---

**Note:** Navigation in this viewer works on a hierarchy structure with folders, subfolders, etc.







---

---

**Note:** The application lets you view supported image files and text files on both your internal storage and microSD card.

---

## Opening and Navigating within Files

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (My Files).
2. Tap a folder and scroll down or up until you locate your selected file.
  - **Home tab**  allows you to back up to the root directory.
  - **Up tab**  allows you to back up into a higher directory.
  - Press  and then tap **View by** to change the way the files are displayed on-screen. Choose from: **List**, **List and details**, or **Thumbnail**.
  - Press  for these additional options: **Select all**, **Create folder**, **Search**, **View by**, **Sort by**, and **Settings**.
3. Once you have located your file, tap the file name to launch the associated application.

## Navigation

Google Maps Navigation (Beta) is an internet-connected turn-by-turn, GPS navigation system with voice guidance.

---



**Caution!** Traffic data is not real-time and directions may be wrong, dangerous, prohibited, or involve ferries.

---


---

**Important!** To receive better GPS signals, avoid using your device in the following conditions:




- inside a building or between buildings
  - in a tunnel or underground passage
  - in poor weather
  - around high-voltage or electromagnetic fields
  - in a vehicle with tinted windows
- 

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Navigation).
2. Read the on-screen disclaimer regarding the current release status of the Navigation app and tap **Accept**.

## Enabling GPS Location

1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings → Location services**.
2. Tap **Use wireless networks** allows apps to use data from sources such as Wi-Fi and mobile networks to provide a better approximation of your current location.
3. Tap **Use GPS satellites** to enable the GPS satellite.
4. Tap **Location and Google search** to allow Google to use your location data to improve your search results and other services.

## Navigation options

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Navigation). The navigation application can be configured from the main screen.
2. If prompted, read the on-screen disclaimer and tap **Accept**.
3. Choose from the following on-screen options:
  - **Driving/Walking/Bicycling**  : tap to configure the method of travel. Selection of Walking negates the need to track traffic jams and obstructions, for example.


- **Speak destination:** allows you to use the voice recognition feature to search for matching locations in your area.
- **Type destination:** allows you to manually enter a destination address (via the on-screen keypad).
- **Go home:** allows you to return to a designated “Home” location.
  - When prompted initially to setup a home address, enter the location into the **Enter an address** field and tap Save.
- **Map:** enables the on-screen real-time map functionality.

### *Navigation Map options*

Once on the map screen, you can access the following features:

- **Destination:** returns you to the previous Navigation options screen.
- **Search by voice:** Speak your destination instead of typing.
- **Layers:** allows you to switch map views:
  - **Traffic view:** (available only in selected areas) Real-time traffic conditions are displayed over roads as color-coded lines. Each color represents how fast the traffic is moving.

- **Satellite:** Maps uses the same satellite data as Google Earth. Satellite images are not real-time. Google Earth acquires the best imagery available, most of which is approximately one to three years old.
- **Parking:** displays parking information relative to your current location.
- **Gas stations:** displays gas station location relative to your current location.
- **ATMs & banks:** displays ATM and Bank locations relative to your current location.
- **Restaurants:** displays restaurant and eatery locations relative to your current location.


While on the map screen, press  to access additional options:

- **Route and alternates:** lets you select an alternate route and set routing options.
- **Directions list:** provides a written list of directions to the destination.
- **Layers:** allows you to switch map views. See previous description.
- **Turn off voice/Turn on voice:** turns voice guidance on and off.
- **Exit navigation:** terminates the application.

- **More:** provides additional options
  - **Search:** manually search for a destination address, place, name of business, or even a type of business.
- **Set destination:** returns you to the navigation options screen where you can access a destination by either Speaking, Typing, or selecting from a Contacts entry or Starred Place.
- **Settings:** provides access to both Power settings (Screen dimming) and Information (Terms, privacy & notices).
- **Help:** opens the browser and accesses online help for Google Navigation.

## Phone

This application provides the ability to make or answering calls, access the Contacts list, which is used to store contact information.





- From the Home screen, tap  (Phone).

For more information, refer to “*Call Functions and Contacts List*” on page 51.

## Play Books

Formerly known as Google Books, this application allows you to read over 3 million ebooks on the go.

Build your ebooks library in the cloud with Play Books: jump right into a bestseller or select from nearly 3 million free ebooks. Personalize the reader to your liking, pick up reading where you left off on your phone or computer, and settle down with a great book on your Android phone!

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Play Books).
2. If prompted, tap **Turn sync on**. This synchronizes your books you have previously selected between your Books account and your device.
3. Tap  to begin searching for both free and paid ebooks.
4. Tap the shop icon  to browse the full catalog.
5. Follow the on-screen prompts to download the ebook to your device.

## Play Magazines

With Google Play Magazines, you can subscribe to your favorite magazines and have them available to read on your device at any time or any place.



1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Play Magazines).
2. Log on to your Google account if you have not already done so. For more information, refer to “*Creating a New Google Account*” on page 12.
3. At the **Welcome!** display, tap the shop icon  to browse the full catalog.
4. Read the Google Play Terms of Service and tap **Accept**.
5. Sweep the screen to the left or right to view Categories, Home, Top Selling, and New Arrivals.
6. Tap a magazine to see more information and subscribe.
7. Follow the on-screen instructions to subscribe to a magazine.

## Play Movies

This application allows you to connect to the Play Store, download a movie and then watch it instantly.

Learn more about Google Play Movies at:



<http://play.google.com/about/movies>.

- From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Play Movies).

For more information, refer to “*Play Movies*” on page 142.

## Play Music

With Google Play Music, you can play music that you have added to your music file as well as any music you copied from your PC. While offline, you can listen to music you have copied from your PC.

- From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Play Music).



For more information, refer to “*Play Music*” on page 142.

## Play Store

Formerly known as the “Android Market”, this application provides access to downloadable applications and games to install on your phone. The Play Store also allows you to provide feedback and comments about an application, or flag an application that might be incompatible with your phone.

Before using the Play Store, you must have a Google Account.



### Accessing the Play Store

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Play Store).
2. If not already logged in with your Google account, tap **Next**.
3. Tap **Existing** and enter your Google account information.
4. Tap **Accept** to agree to the Play Store terms of service.

For more information, refer to “*Downloading a New Google Application*” on page 167.

## Downloading a New Google Application

To download a new application, you will need to use your Google account to sign in to the Play Store. The home page provides several ways to find applications. The home page features applications and includes a list of item applications by category, a list of games, a link to search, and a link to My apps.

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Play Store).
2. Browse through the categories, find an application you're interested in, and tap the name.
3. Read the application descriptions.

---

**Important!** If the selected application requires access to data or control of a function on your device, the Play Store displays the information the application will access. Tap **OK** if you agree to the conditions of the application. Once you tap **OK** on this screen you are responsible for using this application on the device and the amount of data it uses. Use this feature with caution.



---

#### 4. Tap Install → Accept & download.

---

**Note:** Use caution with applications which request access to any personal data, functions, or significant amounts of data usage times.

---

5. If prompted, follow the on-screen instructions to pay for the application.
6. Check the progress of the current download by opening the Notifications panel. The content download icon  appears in the notification area of the status bar.
7. On the main Play Store screen, press  and then tap **My Apps**, tap an installed application in the list, and then tap **Open**.

---

**Tip:** Newly downloaded applications display in the applications list and are shown in alphabetical order if the View Type is set to Alphabetical grid or Alphabetical list, or at the end of the list if View type is set to Customizable grid.


---

---

**Note:** A data plan is required to use this feature. Charges may apply. Please contact your service provider for further details.

---

## Launching an Installed Google Application

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps).
2. Tap the newly installed application.

## Android Development

This device can be used for Android application development. You can write applications in the SDK and install them on this device, then run the applications using the hardware, system, and network.

---


**Warning!** Because the device can be configured with system software not provided by or supported by Google or any other company, end-users operate these devices at their own risk.

---



## Unknown sources

This feature can be used for Android application development. The feature allows developers to install non-Play Store applications.

- From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings → Security → Unknown sources**.

Unknown sources displays a check mark to indicate it is active.


---

**Note:** If Unknown sources is disabled, applications without a certificate will not be allowed to download to your device.


---

## Manage applications

This feature allows you to manage and remove installed applications. You can also view the amount of memory or resources used as well as the remaining memory and resources for each of the applications on your device and clear the data, cache, or defaults.


- From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings → Application manager**.

## Clearing application cache and data

1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings → Application manager**.
2. Tap an application in which to clear the cache or data.
3. Tap **Force stop**, **Uninstall**, **Clear data**, **Clear cache**, or **Clear defaults**.



## Uninstalling third-party applications

You can uninstall any application you downloaded and installed from the Play Store.

1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings → Application manager → All**.
2. Tap the third-party application, and from the **Application info** screen, tap **Uninstall**.

## Polaris Office 4.0




Polaris® Office Mobile for Android is a Microsoft Office compatible office suite. This application provides a central place for managing your documents online or offline. The application can also open Adobe PDF (Portable Document Format) files.

1. From the Home screen, tap  (**Apps**) →  (**Polaris Office 4.0**) .


2. Enter your Email information (if desired) and touch **Register** to complete the process.  
– or –  
Touch **Skip** to ignore this registration.  
The main Polaris Office screen displays.
3. Follow the on-screen instructions to use Polaris Office.

## S Planner

With S Planner you can consult the calendar by day, week, or month, create events, and set an alarm to act as a reminder.




1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (S Planner). The following tabs are available on the right side of the display:
  - **Year**: displays the Year view.
  - **Month**: displays the Month view.
  - **Week**: displays the Week view.
  - **Day**: displays the Day view.
  - **List**: displays the events in a List view.
  - **Task**: allows you to search for tasks.
2. Tap  (Create event) to create a new Calendar event.

– or –

Tap **Today** to display the current date indicated by a blue box, then press  and select one of the following options:




- **Go to**: displays a specific date.
- **Delete**: allows you to delete All events, All events before today, or an individual event.
- **Search**: allows you to search within your current events.
- **Sync**: synchronizes your current calendar events with your available accounts (such as Gmail, Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync, etc..).
- **Settings**: displays a list of configurable settings.

## Creating a Calendar Event

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (S Planner).
2. Within the Year, Month, Week, and Day tabs, tap  (Create event).

## Calendar Settings



Using the Calendar settings you can select the day with which you want the calendar to begin. You also select how you want to view the calendar, by Month, Week, or Day or determine how to manage events, notifications, sounds, and defaults reminders.

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (S Planner).
2. Press  → Settings.
3. Tap **Month view styles** and select a style: **Calendar view + list** or **Calendar view + pop-up**.
4. Tap **Week view** and select a type: **Timeline** or **Analogue**.
5. Tap **First day of week** and select either **Locale default**, **Saturday**, **Sunday** or **Monday**.
6. Tap **Hide declined events** to activate this option. A checkmark indicates selection.
7. Tap **Lock time zone** (to lock event time based on your current user-selected time zone). Select a time zone from within the **Select time zone** field.
8. Tap **Show week number** to display the week numbers along the side of the week entries.

9. Tap **Calendars** and select the type of general synchronization settings you want. A checkmark indicates selection.
10. Tap **Set alerts and notifications** to adjust the event notification method. Choose from: **Alert**, **Status bar notification**, and **Off**.
11. Tap **Select ringtone** to assign a ringtone to a calendar event notification.
12. Tap **Vibration** to assign a vibration notification to this event.
13. Tap **Default reminder time** to assign a default time frame for event reminders.
14. Tap **Notifications when screen off** to display notifications on the full screen while it is turned off.
15. Tap **Quick responses** to edit your default quick responses for outbound emails. These are default responses similar to those used by text templates.
16. Tap **Swipe with two fingers** to change the way events are displayed when swiped.

## S Voice

Launches your phone's built-in voice recognition system that allows you to initiate several common tasks without having to touch the phone. Features include: Voice dial, Text, Navigate, Memo, Music, Search, and Driving mode.

- From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (S Voice).

For more information, refer to *"Using S Voice"* on page 59.



## Samsung Apps

Allows you to easily download an abundance of applications to your device. This includes games, news, reference, social networking, navigation, and more. Samsung Apps makes your Smartphone smarter.

---

**Note:** Access to this feature requires that you already be logged in to your Samsung account application. For more information, refer to *"Creating a Samsung Account"* on page 14.



---

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Samsung Apps).

2. If prompted, read the on-screen disclaimer and agree to the information.
3. Follow the on-screen instructions.

## Settings

This icon navigates to the sound and phone settings for your device. It includes such settings as: display, security, memory, and any extra settings associated with your phone.

- From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Settings).

– or –



Press  →  and then tap Settings.

For more information, refer to *"Changing Your Settings"* on page 196.

- 4.

## Talk

You can instant message with Google Talk. Google Talk allows you to communicate with other people who are also connected with Google Talk on the phone or on the web.

- From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Talk).

For more information, refer to *"Talk"* on page 126.



## Video Hub

Samsung Video Hub provides a platform for downloading and viewing of movies, television shows and other entertainment content.

---



**Note:** Video Hub service requires a Samsung account and depends on service availability.

---

1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Video Hub** .
2. Follow the online instructions to rent or buy media.

## Video Player









The Video Player application plays video files stored on your microSD card.

- From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Video Player).

For more information, refer to *“Using the Video Player”* on page 141.

## Voice Recorder

The Voice Recorder allows you to record an audio file up to one minute long and then send it as a message.



1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Voice Recorder).
2. Tap  (Record) to record an audio file.
3. Tap  (Stop) to stop recording. The file automatically saves to the Voice list.
4. Tap  (Pause) to pause the recording of an audio file.
5. Tap  (Cancel) to cancel the recording of an audio file.
6. Tap  (List) to display a list of current recordings.
7. From the Recorded files page, press  and then select one of the following:
  - **Share via** and select a method in which to share this audio file. Selections are: Bluetooth, Email, Gmail, Messaging, or Wi-Fi Direct. Refer to each specific section, depending on the method you selected to send this voice recording.

- **Delete:** allows you to delete 1 or more voice recordings. Tap the recordings to delete and tap **Delete**.
- **Settings:** the following settings are available:
  - **Storage:** allows you to choose where your recordings will be saved. Select between Phone or memory card.
  - **Recording quality:** allows you to set the recording quality to High or Normal.
  - **Limit for MMS:** allows you to select On or Off. If you Limit for MMS by selecting On, you will be assured that the recording can be sent in a message.
  - **Contextual filename:** allows you to assign a filename based on GPS tag information.
  - **Default name:** allows you to choose the name prefix for your recordings. For example, if your Default name is Voice, your recordings would be named Voice 001, Voice 002, Voice 003, etc.
- **End:** allows you to exit the application.
- or –

Find a pre-recorded file, then touch and hold it to get these added options: Share via, Delete, Rename, Set as, or Details.



## Voice Search

Launches the Google Now application that is used for voice to text Internet searching.


1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Voice Search).
2. When prompted, speak into the built-in microphone.
3. Use the on-screen options to find a matching search term.

## YouTube

YouTube is a video sharing website on which users can upload and share videos, and view them in MPEG-4 format.

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (YouTube).
2. When the screen loads you can begin searching and viewing posted videos.

## To configure YouTube Settings:

- Press  and then tap **Settings** and configure the following parameters:
  - **General**
    - **High quality on mobile**, when enabled, allows you to start all videos in high quality mode while you are connected to a mobile network.
    - **Caption font size** allows you to set the font size used by on-screen captions. Choose from: Small, Medium, Large, or Huge.
    - **Uploads** specifies network preferences for uploads.
    - **Content localization** allows you to prioritize channels and videos from a specific country or region.
    - **Improve YouTube** allows you to anonymously send YouTube information to help improve the application.
  - **Connected TVs**
    - **Add a TV** pairs the device with your TV
    - **Edit TVs** lets you rename or remove paired TVs at any time.

- **Search**

- **Clear search history** allows you to clear previous YouTube searches from showing up in the YouTube search box.
- **Never remember history** allows you to force YouTube to never store search history information.
- **SafeSearch filtering** allows you to configure block settings for videos containing restricted content. This option blocks these videos from appearing within your search results. Choose from: Don't filter, Moderate, or Strict blocking.

- **Preloading**

- **Preload subscriptions** allows you to preload (or go get videos while on Wi-Fi and charging) your subscription videos.
- **Preload watch later** allows you to enable the preload function on selected videos so you can watch them later. Read the data usage information and tap **OK** to accept the terms.


---

**Note:** Preloading YouTube videos will use some of your device's storage space and may result in additional charges if your Wi-Fi plan is not unlimited.

---

- About
  - Help provides answers to most YouTube questions.
  - Feedback allows you to provide user feedback to YouTube.
  - Google Mobile Terms of Service
  - YouTube Terms of Service
  - Google Mobile Privacy Policy
  - YouTube Privacy Policy
  - Open source licensing
  - App version displays the software version for the current YouTube application.

To watch a high quality video:

- Press  and then tap Settings → General → High quality on mobile.



## Section 10: Connections

---



Your phone is equipped with features that allow you to quickly connect to the Web.

### Web



Your phone is equipped with a Google browser to navigate the mobile web. This section explains how to navigate the browser and use the basic features.

### Accessing the Internet

To access the Browser:

- From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Internet).

### Navigating with the Browser

1. Tap an entry to select an item.
2. Sweep the screen with your finger in an up or down motion to scroll through a website.
3. To return to a previous page, tap .
4. To move forward to a web page, tap .

### Browser Options

1. From the top of the browser screen, select an available option:
  - **Navigation:** use the forward and back buttons to navigate through your browsing activity.
  - **Refresh:** reloads the current page.
  - **Windows:** displays a list of the windows you have open.
  - **Bookmarks:** provides access to the Bookmarks screen.– or –

From any webpage, press  to access the following options:


- **New window:** launches a new browser window. By default, this screen shows the web2go home page.
- **Add bookmark:** allows you to add a URL to your bookmark list.
- **Add shortcut:** creates a shortcut to the web2go Home page and then places it on an open area on an available extended screen.

- **Share page:** allows you to share the page using Gmail or as a message.
- **Find on page:** allows you to search in the current page.
- **Desktop view:** allows you to assign the browser to display the current page in the desktop view (to closely mimic the display as it would appear on a Desktop computer).
- **Save for offline reading:** allows you to store the current page in memory so that it can be read later even if you loose your Internet connection.
- **Brightness:** allows you to assign a brightness level specifically for the browser window. This is independent of the brightness assigned within the device's Settings menu.
- **Downloads:** displays the download history.
- **Print:** provides print access on compatible Samsung printers.
- **Settings:** allows you to change the way you view your web pages by changing these options. See "Browser Settings" on page 182.

## Entering a URL


You can access a website quickly by entering the URL. Websites are optimized for viewing on your phone.

To enter a URL and go to a particular website:

- From the homepage tap the **URL** field at the top of the screen, enter the URL and tap .



## Search the Internet

To perform an Internet search using keywords:

1. From within the Browser, tap the **URL** field at the top of the screen, enter the keyword(s) to search using the on-screen keypad and tap .
2. Tap a link to view the website.

## Adding and Deleting Windows

To add a new window:

1. From your browser window, tap  (Windows) →  (New window).
2. A new browser window displays.



---

**Note:** The number of currently open windows is displayed at the bottom of the Windows screen.

---

3. Scroll across the screen to view the currently active windows and tap an entry to launch the selected Internet window.

To delete an existing window:

1. From your browser window, tap  (Windows).
2. Scroll across the available windows and locate your target window.
3. Tap  next to the listing to delete the window.

## Going Incognito



The incognito feature allows you to view Internet sites outside of the normal browsing. Pages viewed in this incognito window won't appear within your browser history or search history, and no traces (such as cookies) are left on your device.

---

**Note:** Any downloaded files will be preserved and will stay on your device after you exit the incognito mode.

---

To add a new incognito window:



1. From your browser window, tap  (Windows) →  (Incognito).
2. A new browser window displays.

---

**Note:** The incognito icon appears in the upper-left of the new browser window while you are in this mode.



---

To exit from the incognito window:

1. From your browser window, tap  (Windows).
2. Scroll across the available windows and locate the incognito window.
3. Tap  next to the incognito listing to delete this window.

## Using Bookmarks


While navigating a website, you can bookmark a site to quickly and easily access it at a future time. The URLs (website addresses) of the bookmarked sites display in the Bookmarks page. From the Bookmarks page you can also view your Most visited websites and view your History.

1. From the webpage, tap  (Bookmarks).  
The **Bookmarks** page displays. Additional pages include **History** and **Saved pages**.
2. Press  to display the following options:
  - **List/Thumbnail view:** Select **Thumbnail view** (default) to view a thumbnail of the webpage with the name listed, or select **List view** to view a list of the bookmarks with Name and URL listed.

- **Create folder:** Creates a new folder in which to store new bookmarks.
  - **Change order:** Rearranges the current bookmarks.
  - **Move to folder:** Selected bookmarks are moved to a selected folder.
  - **Delete:** Erases selected bookmarks.
3. Tap a bookmark to view the webpage, or touch and hold a bookmark for the following options:
- **Open:** Opens the webpage of the selected bookmark.
  - **Open in new window:** Opens the webpage in a new window.
  - **Edit bookmark:** Allows you to edit the name or URL of the bookmark. For more information, refer to “*Editing Bookmarks*” on page 180.
  - **Add shortcut:** Adds a shortcut to the bookmarked webpage to your phone’s Home screen.
  - **Share link:** Allows you to share a URL address via Bluetooth, Email, Flipboard, Gmail, Google+, Memo, Messaging, Wi-Fi Direct.
  - **Copy link URL:** Allows you to copy the URL address to use in a message.

- **Delete bookmark:** Allows you to delete a bookmark. For more information, refer to “*Deleting Bookmarks*” on page 181.
- **Set as homepage:** Sets the bookmark to your new homepage.

### Adding Bookmarks

1. From the Home webpage, tap  → **Add bookmark**.
2. Use the on-screen keypad to enter the name of the bookmark and, if necessary, the Address (URL).
3. Tap the **Location** field to assign a folder location. **Home** is the default.
4. Select a storage location for your new bookmark.
5. Tap **Save**. The new save page now appears on the Bookmarks page.

### Editing Bookmarks

1. From the Bookmarks page, touch and hold the bookmark you want to edit.
2. Tap **Edit bookmark**.
3. Use the on-screen keypad to edit the name of the bookmark or the URL.
4. Tap the **Location** field to assign a new folder location. **Home** is the default.


5. Tap **Save** or **Cancel** to exit the operation.

### *Deleting Bookmarks*

1. From the Bookmarks page, touch and hold the bookmark you want to delete.
2. Tap **Delete bookmark**.
3. At the confirmation window, tap **OK**.


### *Emptying the Cookies*

A cookie is a small file placed on your phone by a website during navigation. In addition to containing some site-specific information, a cookie can also contain some personal information (such as a username and password) which might pose a security risk if not properly managed. You can clear these cookies from your phone at any time.

1. From an active Web page, press  and then tap **Settings** → **Privacy and security** → **Clear all cookie data**.
2. Tap **OK** to delete the cookies or tap **Cancel** to exit.

### *Using Web History*

The History list displays a list of the most recently viewed websites. These entries can be used to return to previously unmarked web pages.

1. From any webpage, tap  → **History** tab.
  2. Select a visited range category. Choose from: Today, Last 7 days, or Most visited.
  3. Tap an entry to display the webpage.
- or –

Press  and then tap **Clear history** to delete the current History list.

### *Using Most Visited*

The Most visited list provides you with a list of the most visited and bookmarked websites. These entries are used to return to previously unmarked web pages.




1. From any webpage, tap  → **History** → **Most visited** tab.

A list of your most frequently visited webpages displays. The most frequently visited web pages display at the top of the list.

2. Tap any entry to display the selected webpage.

## Browser Settings

To configure browser settings:

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Internet).
2. Press  and then tap **Settings**.
3. Choose an option from the following categories:

### General:

- **Set homepage:** Sets the current home page for the Web browser.
- **Form auto-fill:** Allows you to fill in Web forms with a single tap.
- **Auto-fill text:** Allows you to set the text used for the Web form auto-fill feature.

### Privacy and security:

- **Clear cache:** Deletes all currently cached data. Tap **OK** to complete the process.
- **Clear history:** Clears the browser navigation history. Tap **OK** to complete the process.
- **Show security warnings:** Notifies you if there is a security issue with the current website. Remove the check mark to disable this function.

- **Accept cookies:** Allows sites, that require cookies, to save and read cookies from your device.
- **Clear all cookie data:** Deletes all current browser cookie files.
- **Remember form data:** Allows the device to store data from any previously filled out forms. Remove the check mark to disable this function.
- **Clear form data:** Deletes any stored data from previously filled out forms. Tap **OK** to complete the process.
- **Enable location:** Allows websites to request access to your location.
- **Clear location access:** Clears location access for all websites. Tap **OK** to complete the process.
- **Remember passwords:** Stores usernames and passwords for visited sites. Remove the check mark to disable this function.
- **Clear passwords:** Deletes any previously stored usernames or passwords. Tap **OK** to complete the process.
- **Enable notifications:** Activates Web notifications.
- **Clear notifications:** Clears current Web notifications.

### Accessibility:

- **Force zoom:** Allows you to override a website's zoom setting and forces a zoom view.
- **Text size:** Allows you to manually adjust the size of the on-screen text size (Scale text up and down), Zoom amount on double tap, and minimum font size via the use of an on-screen slider.
- **Inverted rendering:** Allows you to adjust the way a Web page is displayed to make it easier to view or read. Enabling this feature causes a page to rendered in reverse - Black becomes white and vice versa. On-screen white text is displayed as white text on a black background.
- **Contrast:** Allows you to adjust the on-screen contrast.

---

**Note:** The Contrast feature is disabled until the Inverted rendering function is active.

---

### Advanced:

- **Select search engine:** Allows you to choose a default search engine for your phone. Choose from: **Google Search**, **Yahoo!**, or **Bing**.
- **Open in background:** New pages are launched in a separate page and displayed behind the current one. Remove the check mark to disable this function.
- **Enable JavaScript:** Enables javascript for the current Web page. Without this feature, some pages may not display properly. Remove the check mark to disable this function.
- **Allow multiple tabs per app:** Provides the ability for different applications to launch separate tabs.
- **Enable plug-ins:** Allows the download of plug-ins such as Adobe Flash.
- **Default storage:** Sets the default storage to either Device or Memory card.
- **Website settings:** View advanced settings for individual websites.
- **Default zoom:** Adjusts the zoom feature. Set to Far, Medium, or Close.

- **Open pages in overview:** Displays an overview of recently viewed web pages.
- **Auto-fit pages:** Allows web pages to be resized to fit as much of the screen as possible.
- **Block pop-ups:** Prevents popup advertisement or windows from appearing on-screen. Remove the check mark to disable this function.
- **Text encoding:** Adjusts the current text encoding.
- **Reset to default:** Clears all browser data and resets all settings to default.

#### Bandwidth management:

- **Preload search results:** Allows the browser to preload high confidence search results in the background. If the device can accurately guess your in-progress search, it will begin to load the matching Web page before you complete the search request.
- **Page preloading:** Allows the browser to preload pages in the background.
- **Load images:** Allows web page images to load along with the other text components of a loaded website.

#### Labs:

- **Quick controls:** allows you to enable on-screen quick controls via the use of Swype thumb actions.
- **Fullscreen:** Allows Web pages to be resized to fit as much of the screen as possible.



## Bluetooth


### About Bluetooth

Bluetooth is a short-range communications technology that allows you to connect wirelessly to a number of Bluetooth devices, such as headsets and hands-free car kits, and Bluetooth-enabled handhelds, computers, printers, and wireless devices. The Bluetooth communication range is approximately 30 feet.

### Turning Bluetooth On and Off



To turn Bluetooth on:

1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings**.
2. In a single motion touch and slide the **Bluetooth** slider to the right to turn it on .

The slider color indicates the activation status. When active,  displays in the Status area.



To turn Bluetooth off:

1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings**.
2. In a single motion touch and slide the **Bluetooth** slider to the left to turn it off .

### Bluetooth Status Indicators

The following icon shows your Bluetooth connection status at a glance:






Displays when Bluetooth is active.

### Bluetooth Settings


The Bluetooth settings menu allows you to set up many of the characteristics of your device's Bluetooth service, including:

- Entering or changing the name your device uses for Bluetooth communication and description
- Setting your device's visibility (or "discoverability") for other Bluetooth devices
- Displaying your device's Bluetooth address

To access the Bluetooth Settings menu:

1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings** → **Bluetooth**.
2. Verify Bluetooth is active (indicated by ).
3. Press  and tap the **Rename device**, **Visibility timeout**, and **Received files** fields to set the options.

To change your Bluetooth name:

1. Verify Bluetooth is active.
2. From the Bluetooth settings page, press  and tap **Rename device**.
3. Enter a new name.
4. Tap **OK** to complete the rename process.

To set visibility:

1. Verify your Bluetooth is active.
2. Near the top of the Bluetooth settings page, tap the selection box at the right side of the device name to add a checkmark and turn visibility on. Activating this feature allows other devices to pair and communicate.

---


**Note:** Your device visibility is based on the time set within the Visible timeout field (2 Minutes, 5 Minutes, 1 Hour, or Never). This value appears as a countdown within this Visibility timeout field.

---

**To scan for Bluetooth devices:**

1. Verify Bluetooth is active.
2. At the bottom of the Bluetooth settings page, tap **Scan** to search for visible external Bluetooth-compatible devices such as headsets, devices, printers, and computers.

**To review your Bluetooth received files:**

1. Verify Bluetooth is active.
2. From the Bluetooth settings page, press  and then tap **Received files**.

## *Pairing Bluetooth Devices*

The Bluetooth pairing process allows you to establish trusted connections between your device and another Bluetooth device. When you pair devices, they share a passkey, allowing for fast, secure connections while bypassing the discovery and authentication process.

---


**Note:** Pairing between two Bluetooth devices is a one-time process. Once pairing is established the devices continue to recognize their partnership and exchange information without entering a passcode.

---

**To pair your device with another Bluetooth device:**

1. Verify Bluetooth is active.
2. From the Bluetooth settings page, tap the selection box at the right side of the device name to add a checkmark and turn visibility on.  
Your device must be visible to successfully pair with an external device. This is shown by a green check mark.
3. Tap **Scan**. Your device displays a list of discovered in-range Bluetooth devices.
4. Tap a device from the list to initiate pairing.

5. Enter the passkey or PIN code, if needed, and tap OK.
6. The external device must accept the connection and enter your device's PIN code.

Once successfully paired to an external device,  displays in the Status area.

---

**Note:** Due to different specifications and features of other Bluetooth-compatible devices, display and operations may be different, and functions such as transfer or exchange may not be possible with all Bluetooth-compatible devices.

---

---


**Important!** If callers can not hear you during a call while using a paired Bluetooth headset (with built-in microphone), verify the **Call audio** option is enabled within the entry's Bluetooth Settings page.

---

### *Deleting a Paired Device (Unpair)*

Deleting a device from your list removes its "connection record" and upon reconnection will require that you re-enter all the previous pairing information.

1. Verify Bluetooth is active.

2. From the Bluetooth settings page, tap  (Settings) → **Unpair** to delete the paired device.


### *Sending Contacts via Bluetooth*

Depending on your paired devices' settings and capabilities, you may be able to send pictures, Contact information, or other items using a Bluetooth connection.

---

**Note:** Prior to using this feature, Bluetooth must first be enabled on both your phone and the external device, and the recipient's device must be visible.

---

1. Verify your Bluetooth is active and your phone is visible.
2. From the Home screen, tap  (Contacts).
3. Touch and hold the entry from the list to display the on-screen context menu.
4. Tap **Share namecard via** → **Bluetooth** and select a paired external Bluetooth device.

---

**Note:** The external Bluetooth device must be visible and communicating for the pairing to be successful.

---


5. A Bluetooth share notification displays in your notifications list.

## Enable Downloading for Web Applications

---

**Important!** Before you can download applications from web locations other than Google Play Store, you must enable the **Unknown sources** security feature.

---

1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings → Security → Unknown sources** check box.
2. Tap **OK** to allow install of non-Play Store applications. Tap again to remove the check mark and disable the installation of non-market applications.

---

**Warning!** Not all web applications are safe to download. In order to protect your phone and data, use Play Store to install web applications. For more information, refer to *"Downloading a New Google Application"* on page 167.

---

## PC Connections

You can connect your device to a PC using an optional PC data cable using various USB connection modes.

**Media device (MTP):** allows you to transfer media files in Windows, or using an Android file transfer on a Mac.



**Camera (PTP):** allows you to transfer photos using the camera software, and transfer any files onto a PC that does not support MTP.

**Kies air:** allows you to sync your Windows PC wirelessly with your phone provided they are both on the same Wi-Fi network.



### *Prior to using Kies air for Phone Update*

Before using Kies air to upgrade your device, it is recommended that you backup your personal data prior to use.

**To export a Contact list to your microSD card:**


1. From the Home screen, tap  (Contacts).
2. Press  and then tap **Import/Export**.
3. Tap **Export to SD card → OK**. For more information, refer to *"Export/Import"* on page 98.

Verify your images and videos are on your microSD card:

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Gallery).
2. Verify the Gallery contains all of your pictures and videos.
3. Remove the microSD card prior to initiating a Kies air update.

### Enabling USB Debugging

USB debugging must be enabled before being able to use the Development feature.

1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings → Developer options**.
2. Tap the **USB debugging** field to verify the feature is active before connecting your USB cable.
3. Using an optional PC data cable, connect the multifunction jack on your device to a PC.


## Kies Air

Kies Air allows you to sync your Windows PC wirelessly with your phone provided they are both on the same Wi-Fi network. You can view and share call logs, videos, photos, music, bookmarks, ringtones, and even send SMS messages from your PC.

---

**Tip:** Before beginning, it is recommended that you update the Java application running on your machine.


---

1. Sign onto the same Wi-Fi network from your phone and from your PC.
2. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings → More settings → Kies via Wi-Fi**.
3. From the Kies air home screen, tap **Scan devices**.
4. If prompted, select a network. Choose from either **Wi-Fi** or **Portable Wi-Fi hotspot**.
5. On the phone, tap the name of the computer. Write down the on-screen URL address.

---

**Important!** Both your phone and your computer must be connected to the same network. Phone connected via Wireless Access Point (WAP), computer via WAP or Ethernet connection.

---

6. From your computer, enter the URL in your Web browser.
7. If prompted, an Access Request prompt is displayed on your device. Tap **Allow** to permit connection between the computer and device.
8. On your computer, you may be prompted to run a Java plugin for a TransferManagerApplet. Click **Run**.
9. Tap the **Remember for today** checkbox if you will be using Kies air with the same PC later.
10. From your PC, a security warning may be displayed asking if you want to run this application. Click **Run** to continue.
11. On your PC, the Kies air screen is displayed. On your phone, the  icon appears at the top of your screen.
12. Follow the on-screen instructions to view and share information between your phone and PC.

13. Click a link from the left navigation pane to access one of several device file categories such as:
  - [Device Name] - provides an overview of all the main categories.
  - Photos/Videos/Music
  - Ringtones
  - Bookmarks
  - Messages/Call Log/Contacts
  - File Explorer
  - Language settings
14. To exit the Kies air application, tap **Stop** on your device, then close out the Web browser on your computer.



## Wi-Fi

### About Wi-Fi


Wi-Fi (short for "wireless fidelity") is a term used for certain types of Wireless Local Area Networks (WLAN). Wi-Fi communication requires access to an existing and accessible Wireless Access Point (WAP). These WAPs can either be Open (unsecured) or Secured (requiring knowledge of the Router name and password).

## Activating Wi-Fi

By default, your device's Wi-Fi feature is turned off (deactivated). Activating Wi-Fi allows your device to discover and connect to compatible in-range WAPs (Wireless Access Points).

1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings**.
2. In a single motion touch and slide the **Wi-Fi** slider to the right to turn it on . The slider color indicates the activation status. The device scans for available in-range wireless networks and displays them under Wi-Fi networks on the same screen.

## Connecting to a Wi-Fi Network

1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings** → **Wi-Fi**.  
The network names and security settings of detected Wi-Fi networks display in the Wi-Fi networks section.
2. Tap a network.

---

**Note:** When you select an open network you are automatically connected.

---

3. Enter a wireless password (if necessary).
4. Tap **Connect**.

## Wi-Fi Status Indicators

The following icons indicate the Wi-Fi connection status:



Displays when Wi-Fi is connected, active, and communicating with a Wireless Access Point (WAP).



Displays when Wi-Fi is active and there is an available open wireless network.



Displays when Wi-Fi Direct is active and configured for a direct connection to another compatible device in the same direct communication mode.



Displays when Wi-Fi Direct is active and communicating





Displays when Mobile HotSpot feature is active and communicating.

## Manually Add a New Network Connection

1. From the Wi-Fi network screen, tap **Add Wi-Fi network**.
2. Enter the Network SSID (the name of your Wireless Access Point).
3. Tap the **Security** field and select a security option. This must match the current security setting on your target WAP.
4. Enter your WAP's password if the WAP is secure.
5. Tap **Save** to store the new information and connect to the target WAP.

## Deactivating Wi-Fi



1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings**.
2. In a single motion touch and slide the **Wi-Fi** slider to the left to turn it off  .  
– or –  
Activate and Deactivate Wi-Fi from the Notification bar.

---

**Note:** Use of wireless data connections such as Wi-Fi and Bluetooth can reduce battery life and use times.

---

## Manually Scan for a Wi-Fi Network



1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings → Wi-Fi**.
2. In a single motion touch and slide the **Wi-Fi** slider to the right to turn it on  .
3. Tap **Scan**.

## Wi-Fi Advanced Settings

The Wi-Fi settings - Advanced menu allows you to set up many of the device's Wi-Fi services, including:

- Setting the Wi-Fi sleep policy
- Viewing the device's MAC Address
- Configuring use of either a DHCP or Static IP

To access the **Wi-Fi Advanced Settings** menu:

1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings → Wi-Fi**.
2. Press  and then tap **Advanced**.



## USB Tethering



This option allows you to share your device's mobile data connection via a direct USB connection between your device and a computer. The Portable HotSpot connectivity is a wireless version of this same functionality and allows you to provide Internet connectivity to multiple devices.

---


**Note:** You can not mount your device's microSD card to your computer while using the USB tethering feature. If additional software or USB drivers are required, navigate to: <http://www.samsung.com/us/support/downloads>.

---

### To connect using USB Tethering:


1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings → More settings → Tethering and portable hotspot**.
2. Plug in the USB cable between your computer and your phone.
3. When prompted for a USB mode, press  to exit the menu.

4. Tap **USB tethering** from the Tethering menu. This places a green check mark next to the entry and activates the feature. A Tethering or HotSpot active notification briefly appears on the screen.

Look for the Tethering active icon  in the Status bar area of the screen.

5. Read the on-screen notification regarding data use and tap **OK**.

### To disconnect tethering:

1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings → More settings → Tethering and portable hotspot**.
2. Tap **USB tethering** from the Tethering menu to remove the check mark and deactivate the feature.
3. Remove the USB cable from the device.

## Portable HotSpot

This feature turns your device into a Wi-Fi HotSpot, allowing you to provide Internet connectivity to multiple devices. The feature works best when used in conjunction with HSPA+ (4G) data services (although 3G service can also be used).

---

**Important!** The Portable HotSpot service can not be active at the same time as Wi-Fi. Please close your Wi-Fi connection prior to launching this service.




---

---

**Note:** You must have a tethering plan on your account in order to use the Portable HotSpot. You cannot use data on the device while using Portable HotSpot.

---

To activate the Portable HotSpot service:

1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings → More settings → Tethering and portable hotspot**.
2. In a single motion touch and slide the **Portable Wi-Fi hotspot** slider to the right to turn it on . Confirm the Mobile AP service icon  appears at the top of the screen.

3. Tap **Portable Wi-Fi hotspot → Configure**.
4. Enter or edit the **Network SSID**, **Security** setting, and **Password**.
5. Tap **Save**.

---

**Note:** By default, the connection is secured using WPA2 PSK. It is recommended that you maintain a secure connection by using a security method and password for communication.

---

---

**Note:** Using your phone as a Portable HotSpot drains your device's battery much faster. The best way to keep using the device as a HotSpot is by connecting it to a Charger.

---

To connect to the HotSpot:

1. Enable Wi-Fi (wireless) functionality on your target device (laptop, media device, etc.).
2. Scan for Wi-Fi networks from the device and select your phone's Portable HotSpot name from the network list.
  - The SSID name for your device's HotSpot is determined by the text in the **Network SSID** field.

- You can change the name by tapping **Configure** → **Network SSID** and changing the entry.
3. Select this HotSpot and follow your on-screen instructions to complete the connection.



The connected device can now use internet through your Portable Wi-Fi hotspot.

## Section 11: Changing Your Settings



---

This section explains the sound and phone settings for your device. It includes such settings as: display, security, memory, and any extra settings associated with your device.

### Accessing Settings

- From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Settings).



– or –

Press  →  and then tap **Settings**. The Settings screen displays.

### Wi-Fi Settings



This section describes the Wi-Fi settings. For more information, refer to “Wi-Fi” on page 190.

#### Activating Wi-Fi

1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings**.
2. In a single motion touch and slide the **Wi-Fi** slider to the right to turn it on . The device scans for available in-range wireless networks and displays them under Wi-Fi networks on the same screen.

### Wi-Fi settings



Once set up for Wi-Fi connectivity, your device automatically uses Wi-Fi, when available, for all your mobile services.

1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings** → **Wi-Fi**.
2. Press  and then tap **Advanced**. Configure the settings as desired.

The available Wi-Fi connection are displayed with a security type displayed next to them.

### Network Notification



By default, when Wi-Fi is on, you receive notifications in the Status bar anytime your phone detects an available Wi-Fi network. You can deactivate this feature if you do not want to receive notifications.

1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings** → **Wi-Fi**.
2. Press  and then tap **Advanced**.
3. Tap **Network notification**. A check mark displayed next to the feature indicates Network notification is active.

4. Tap **Network notification** again to remove the check mark and deactivate this feature.

### *Wi-Fi During Sleep*

By default, when your device enter a sleep mode, your Wi-Fi connection stays on all the time. If Wi-Fi is disabled during sleep, data transfer is handled by your SIM and its network connection.



1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings** → **Wi-Fi**.
2. Press  and then tap **Advanced** → **Keep Wi-Fi on during sleep**.
3. Select an available option:
  - **Always**: maintains your current active Wi-Fi connection even during sleep.
  - **Only when plugged in**: maintains the active Wi-Fi connection only when the device detects it is connected to a power supply. This reduced the drain on your device's battery.
  - **Never (increase data usage)**: shuts off the current Wi-Fi connection during sleep and diverts any current data usage to the cellular network connection.

### *Check for Internet Service*


The device can check if Wi-Fi Internet service is available when an AP is connected.

1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings** → **Wi-Fi**.
2. Press  and then tap **Advanced** → **Check for Internet service**.

### *Finding your Wi-Fi Address Information*

1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings** → **Wi-Fi**.
2. Press  and then tap **Advanced**.
3. Locate the MAC Address and IP Address information at the bottom of the screen.
  - **MAC address**: view your device's MAC address, required when connecting to some secured networks (not configurable).
  - **IP address**: view your device's IP address.

### *Manually Adding a Wi-Fi Network*

1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings** → **Wi-Fi** → **Add Wi-Fi network**.

2. Enter the Network SSID (the name of your Wireless Access Point).
3. Tap the **Security** field and select a security option. This must match the current security setting on your target WAP.
4. Enter your WAP's password if the WAP is secure.
5. Tap **Save** to store the new information and connect to the target WAP.

---

**Note:** An SSID is a unique key that identifies a wireless LAN. Its purpose is to stop other wireless equipment from accessing your LAN — whether accidentally or intentionally. To communicate, wireless devices must be configured with the same SSID.

---

### *WPS Push Button*



The WPS (Wi-Fi Protected Setup) feature allows you to pair your device and WAP without the need to enter a passcode. When the WPS feature is active on your WAP, your device can detect it and then connect to it.

---

**Note:** WPS-capable routers appear in the Wi-Fi list of available devices with **(WPS available)** below their name.

---



#### **To pair your device using WPS:**

1. Follow the WPS activation instructions specific to your Wireless Access Point.
2. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings → Wi-Fi**.
3. Press  then tap **WPS push button**.
4. Once the connection is complete, confirm the external router now appears in the Wi-Fi list as connected.

### *WPS PIN Entry*

If a WPS Push Button does not work, there is an alternative WPS connection method that lets you use a device generated PIN number to establish the connection. This number is entered into your WAP's WPS client PIN field to complete the connection.

#### **To pair your device using WPS P N:**

1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings → Wi-Fi**.
2. Press  then tap **WPS P N entry**.

3. Enter the generated PIN number into your Wi-Fi router's client PIN field.
4. Once the connection is complete, confirm the external router now appears in the Wi-Fi list as connected.

### Wi-Fi Direct Setup and Settings

You can configure your device to connect directly with other Wi-Fi capable devices. This is an easy way to transfer data between devices. These devices must be enabled for Wi-Fi direct communication. This connection is direct and not via a HotSpot or WAP.



Displays when Wi-Fi Direct is active and configured for a direct connection to another compatible device in the same direct communication mode.




Displays when Wi-Fi Direct is active and communicating


---

**Note:** Activating this feature will disconnect your current Wi-Fi network connection.

---

To activate your connection:

1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings** → **Wi-Fi**.

2. Touch and slide the **Wi-Fi** slider to the right to turn it on . The slider color indicates the activation status.

3. Tap **Wi-Fi Direct**.

4. Tap **Scan** and select the device name to begin the connection process to another Wi-Fi Direct compatible device.


– or –

Tap **Multi-connect** → **Scan** and select multiple device names to begin the connection process to multiple Wi-Fi Direct compatible devices.

---

**Note:** The target device must also have Wi-Fi Direct service active and running before it can be detected by your device.

---




5. Tap **Done**. The direct connection is then established. Confirm  appears in the Status bar.

## Bluetooth settings



In this menu you can activate Bluetooth, view or assign a device name, activate your phone so other Bluetooth devices can discover it, or scan for other, available Bluetooth devices with which to pair. For more information, refer to “Bluetooth” on page 184.

### Turning Bluetooth On and Off

To turn Bluetooth on:

1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings**.
2. Touch and slide the **Bluetooth** slider to the right to turn it on .  
The slider color indicates the activation status. When active,  displays in the Status area.

To turn Bluetooth off:





1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings**.
2. In a single motion touch and slide the **Bluetooth** slider to the left to turn it off .

---


**Note:** Bluetooth must be enabled prior to use.

---

### Rename the Device

1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings** → **Bluetooth**.
2. Verify Bluetooth is active (indicated by ).
3. Press  and tap the **Rename device**. The assigned device name displays.
4. Tap  to erase the current device name and enter a new name for this device using the keyboard.
5. Tap **OK** to confirm your setting.


### Activating Visibility

1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings** → **Bluetooth**.
2. Verify your Bluetooth is active.
3. From the top of the Bluetooth settings page, toggle the state of the visibility check mark. Activating this feature enabled your device visible allows other devices to pair and communicate.

### Scanning for Devices

This option allows you to scan for active Bluetooth devices so you can pair with them.



1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings → Bluetooth**.
2. From the bottom of the Bluetooth settings page, tap **Scan** to search for visible external Bluetooth-compatible devices such as headsets, devices, printers, and computers.

---

**Important!** Some Bluetooth devices are secured and require a PIN number to confirm and pair with them.


---

3. Enter a PIN to pair with the device, if required, and tap **OK**.


## Data Usage

Monitor and manage your device's data usage capabilities.

Features include activation/deactivation of network data usage, set mobile data usage for a set period of time, and view application data usage.



- From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings → Data usage**.

To activate/deactivate Mobile data usage:

1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings → Data usage**.

2. Tap the **Mobile data** field to activate the feature. A green checkmark indicates the feature is active.


To set a mobile data limit:

1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings → Data usage**.
2. Place a check mark in the **Set mobile data limit** field.
3. Read the on-screen disclaimer info and tap **OK**.
4. Touch and drag the far right ends of the Red or Orange horizontal lines to manually adjust both the Warning and Maximum data limits.
5. Touch and drag the white vertical lines to adjust the time frames.
6. Tap the **Data usage cycle** button and select either the current cycle or define your own by selecting **Change cycle**.
7. Press  and then select from the available on-screen options:
  - **Data roaming** allows you to connect to your service provider's partner networks and access data services when you are out of your service providers area of coverage.

- **Restrict background data** prevents background data usage. This can help prevent over usage of your data minutes.
- **Auto sync data** allows the device to automatically sync information and updates with your various services.
- **Show Wi-Fi usage** activates an additional Wi-Fi tab that shows you your Wi-Fi data usage.
- **Mobile hotspots** allows you to select available Wi-Fi networks that can service as mobile hotspots. Place a checkmark on those entries you wish to use.

## More Settings

This tab displays additional wireless and network information.

- From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings → More settings**.



### Flight mode

This mode allows you to use many of your device's features, such as Camera, Games, and more, when you are in an airplane or in any other area where wireless communication is prohibited.

---


**Important!** When your device is in Flight mode, it cannot send or receive any calls or access online information or applications.

---

1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings → More settings**.
2. Tap **Flight mode**. A check mark displayed next to the feature indicates Flight mode is active. The Flight mode icon  is displayed at the top of your screen.


### Mobile networks

Before you use applications such as Google Maps to find your location or search for places of interest, you must enable the Mobile networks options.

- From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings → More settings → Mobile networks**. The following options display:


### Use mobile data

Allows you to activate mobile data usage on your device.

- From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings → More settings → Mobile networks → Mobile data**.

## Data Roaming

Data roaming allows you to connect to your service provider's partner networks and access data services when you are out of your service providers area of coverage.

1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings → More settings → Mobile networks**.
2. Tap **Data roaming** to connect to data services while roaming outside your network.
  - or –
  - Tap **Data roaming** again to remove the green check mark and deactivate the feature.


---

**Note:** The use of Data roaming may incur significant cost in addition to your usual data fees.

---


## Access Point Names

To access a wireless access point:

- From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings → More settings → Mobile networks → Access Point Names**. A list of the available access points displays. The active access point is indicated by a green button beside the name.


## Network mode

You can configure your phone to automatically detect the best network to use or manually select the type of network. Your phone can use either a 2G (GSM), or 3G/4G (WCDMA) data network connection.

- From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings → More settings → Mobile networks → Network mode**.


## Automatic Network Connection

The phone is capable of automatically detecting the fastest and most stable connection/communication method. This is the default mode for this phone.

1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings → More settings → Mobile networks → Network mode**.
2. Tap **GSM/WCDMA (Auto mode)**. A check mark displays next to this option to indicate that it is active.

### Using the 2G (EDGE) Network

If you are not using applications that require fast network speed (any application that sends or receives significant amounts of data), restricting operation to the GSM (2G) network saves battery life.

1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings → More settings → Mobile networks → Network mode**.
2. Tap **GSM only**. A check mark displays next to this option to indicate that it is active.


---

**Note:** Connecting to 2G networks slows the data transfer speed and time.

---


### Using the 3G/4G (WCDMA) Network

If you are using applications that require 3G network speed, follow these instructions to connect to the WCDMA network only.

1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings → More settings → Mobile networks → Network mode**.
2. Tap **WCDMA only**. A check mark displays next to this option to indicate that it is active.

### Network Operators

Using this feature you can view the current network connection. You can also scan and select a network operator manually, or set the network selection to Automatic.

1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings → More settings → Mobile networks**.
2. Tap **Network operators**. The current network connection displays at the bottom of the list.

---

**Important!** You must deactivate data service prior to searching for an available network.

---

3. Tap **Select automatically** to automatically select a network connection.
  - or –
  - Tap **Search networks** to manually search for a network.

---

**Note:** Connecting to 2G networks slows the data transfer speed and time.

---


### *USB Tethering and Mobile HotSpot*

This option allows you to share your phone's mobile data connection via a direct USB connection between your phone and computer. A wireless version of this same functionality would be the Mobile AP feature.

---

**Note:** You can not mount your device's microSD card to your computer while using the USB tethering feature. If additional software or USB drivers are required, navigate to: <http://www.samsung.com/us/support/downloads>.

---

- From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings → More settings → Tethering and portable hotspot**.

For more information, refer to “*USB Tethering*” on page 193.  
For more information, refer to “*Portable HotSpot*” on page 194.

### *VPN settings*

The VPN settings menu allows you to set up and manage Virtual Private Networks (VPNs).


---

**Important!** Before using VPN, you must first set up a screen unlock PIN or password.

---

### *Adding a VPN*

Before you add a VPN you must determine which VPN protocol to use: PPTP, L2TP/IPSec PSK, L2TP/IPSec RSA, IPSec Xauth PSK, IPSec Xauth RSA, IPSec Hybrid RSA.

1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings → More settings → VPN**.
2. If prompted, read the screen lock information and follow the on-screen steps to setup an unlock PIN or password.
3. Tap **Add VPN network**.
4. In the form that appears, fill in the information provided by your network administrator.


5. Tap **Save**.

---


**Note:** Similar setup process can be used for all available VPN types.

---


### *Connecting to a VPN*

1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings** → **More settings** → **VPN**.
2. Tap the VPN entry you want to connect to.
3. Enter any requested credentials into the pop-up that opens.
4. Tap **Connect**.

### *Edit a VPN*



1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings** → **More settings** → **VPN**.
2. Touch and hold the VPN that you want to edit.
3. In the pop-up that opens, select **Edit network**.
4. Make the desired VPN setting changes.
5. Tap **Save**.

### *Delete a VPN*

1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings** → **More settings** → **VPN**.
2. Touch and hold the VPN that you want to delete.
3. Tap **Delete network** within the pop-up that opens up.


### *Nearby devices*

This option allows you to share your media files with nearby devices using DLNA and connected to the same network.

1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings** → **More settings** → **Nearby devices**.
2. Verify Wi-Fi Direct is enabled and you are paired with the device you wish to detect and share content with.
3. Tap the **File sharing** field to turn File sharing ON. A green checkmark indicates the feature is active. Once active,  (**Nearby devices**) appears at the top of the screen.
4. At the Nearby devices prompt, tap **OK**.
5. Tap **Shared contents**, then check the media you would like to share. Tap **OK**.
6. Tap **Device name**, then use the on-screen keyboard to change the name shown to others. Tap **Save**.

7. Tap **Allowed devices list**, then select the connected devices you would like to allow.
8. Tap **Not-allowed devices list**, then select the connected devices you do not want to allow.
9. Tap **Download to**, then select the destination for any downloaded (shared) content. Choose from Device or SD card.
10. Tap **Upload from other devices**, then select the action to be taken when uploading content from other devices. Choose from Always accept, Always ask, or Always reject.



### *Kies via Wi-Fi*

1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings → More settings**.
2. Tap **Kies via Wi-Fi → OK**.
3. Select a network connection and follow the on-screen connection process.

Refer to the Kies Air process information for more information. For more information, refer to “Kies Air” on page 189.



## Call Settings

To access the Call settings menu:

1. From the Home screen, tap  (**Phone**).
2. Press  and then tap **Call settings**.

### *Configuring General Call Settings*

Configure the general call settings using this option.




1. From the Home screen, tap  (**Phone**).
2. Press  and then tap **Call settings**.
3. Tap one of the following options:
  - **Call rejection**: allows you to manage your rejection mode and rejection list.
    - **Auto reject mode**: sets the phone to automatically reject incoming calls or messages.
    - **Auto reject list**: provides access to current rejection entries and numbers.
  - **Set reject messages**: allows you to manage preloaded rejection messages and create new ones.
  - **Ringtones and keypad tones**: allows you to manage your Device ringtone, Device vibration, Vibrate when ringing, and Keytones settings.

- **Call alert:** allows you to assign call alert tones and activate call alerts and vibration.
  - **Call vibrations:** vibrates the phone when the called party answers or ends the call.
  - **Call status tones:** assigns sounds settings for alerts during calls. Choose from: Call connect tone, Minute minder, and Call end tone.
  - **Alerts on call:** selects whether alarm and message notification is turned off during a call.
- **Answering/ending calls:** allows you to manage the settings for answering and ending calls.
  - **The home key answers calls** allows you to press the Home key to answer the phone.
  - **The power key ends calls** allows you to press the power key to end the current call.
- **Turn off screen during calls:** uses the proximity sensor to turn off the screen when the phone is near your face during a call.
- **Call accessories:** allows you to assign headset settings during incoming calls.
  - **Automatic answering** configures the device to automatically answer and incoming call when a headset is detected.
  - **Automatic answering timer** configures the time delay before the device automatically accepts the incoming call.
  - **Outgoing call conditions** configures the Bluetooth headset settings for outgoing calls. Options include: Even when device locks or Only when device unlocked.
- **Extra volume on calls:** provides an on-screen button that allows you to increase the volume during a call.
- **Call forwarding:** configures call forwarding options. For more information, refer to *“Configuring Call Forwarding”* on page 211.
- **Additional settings:** allows you to configure additional call settings. For more information, refer to *“Configuring Additional Voice Call Settings”* on page 211.
- **Voicemail service:** allows you to assign the service.
- **Voicemail settings:** displays the voicemail number.
- **Ringtone:** assigns your device’s default ringtone.






- **Vibrate:** configures the vibrate settings. Choose from Always, Only in silent mode, or Never.

## Call rejection

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Phone).
2. Press  and then tap **Call settings** → **Call rejection**.
3. Activate the feature by moving the **Auto reject mode** slider to the right.
4. Tap **Auto reject mode** and tap one of the following options:
  - **All numbers:** to reject all calls.
  - **Auto reject numbers:** to reject all numbers in your Reject list.
5. Tap **Auto reject list**.
6. Tap  to manually add numbers to the Reject list.
7. Tap **Unknown** to create a checkmark and automatically reject all calls that are not in your Contacts list.



## Set reject messages

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Phone).
2. Press  and then tap **Call settings** → **Set reject messages**.
3. Tap  to manually add a reject message.  
– or –

Tap one of the pre-written messages to be displayed when you want the call to be rejected. You can edit the message if desired.



4. Tap **Save** to save the reject message.

## Ringtones and keypad tones



1. From the Home screen, tap  (Phone).
2. Press  and then tap **Call settings** → **Ringtones and keypad tones**.
3. Tap **Device ringtone**, select a ringtone, and tap **OK**.
4. Tap **Device vibration**, select a vibration pattern, and tap **OK**.
5. Tap **Vibrate when ringing** to create a checkmark if you want your phone to vibrate when a call is received.

6. Tap **Keytones** to create a checkmark if you want tones to play when the keypad is pressed.

### *Call alert*



1. From the Home screen, tap  (Phone).
2. Press  and then tap **Call settings** → **Call alert**.
3. Tap **Call vibrations** to enable your phone to vibrate when the called party answers the phone.
4. Tap **Call status tones** to set the sound settings during a call then tap **OK**.
5. Tap **Alerts on call** to turn off alarm and message notifications during a call.

### *Call answering/ending*



1. From the Home screen, tap  (Phone).
2. Press  and then tap **Call settings** → **Call settings** → **Answering/ending calls**.
3. Select any of the following options:
  - **The home key answers calls** allows you to press the Home key to answer the phone.
  - **The power key ends calls** allows you to press the power key to end the current call.

### *Auto screen off during calls*

This option uses the proximity sensor to turn the screen off during calls to save power.



1. From the Home screen, tap  (Phone).
2. Press  and then tap **Call settings** → **Turn off screen during calls** to create a checkmark and enable the feature.

### *Accessory settings for call*



1. From the Home screen, tap  (Phone).
2. Press  and then tap **Call settings** → **Call accessories**.
3. The following options are available:
  - **Automatic answering**: configures the device to automatically answer and incoming call when a headset is detected.
  - **Automatic answering timer**: configures the time delay before the device automatically accepts the incoming call.
  - **Outgoing call conditions**: adjusts your Bluetooth headset settings to allow you to make calls even when the device is locked.

## Use extra vol. for calls



This option allows you to see an extra volume button on the screen during calls.

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Phone).
2. Press  and then tap Call settings → Extra volume on calls to create a checkmark and enable the feature.

## Configuring Call Forwarding




1. From the Home screen, tap  (Phone).
2. Press  and then tap Call settings → Call forwarding.
3. Tap an available option:
  - **Always forward:** incoming calls are re-routed to a secondary number that you specify.
  - **Forward when busy:** forwards all your calls to voicemail when your phone is busy.
  - **Forward when unanswered:** automatically forwards to your voicemail number when the phone is not answered, and otherwise allows you to enter a voicemail number.
  - **Forward when unreachable:** automatically forwards to your voicemail number when the phone is not in service, or is turned off.

## Configuring Additional Voice Call Settings

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Phone).
2. Press  and then tap Call settings → Additional settings.
3. Tap one of the following options:
  - **Caller ID:** chooses whether your number is displayed when someone answers your outgoing call. Choose from: Network default, Hide number, or Show number.
  - **Call barring:** blocks specific types of calls (All outgoing calls, International calls, etc.).
  - **Call waiting:** notifies you of an incoming call while you are on another call.
  - **Auto redial:** automatically redial the dialed number if it is unable to connect or the call is cut off.
  - **Fixed Dialing Numbers:** manages fixed dialing numbers. See description on page 212.
  - **Auto area code:** allows you to automatically prepend a specific area code to all outbound calls.

## Using Auto Area Code



This feature prepends an area code to all outbound calls. When enabled, the designated prefix is always added before your dialed numbers.

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Phone).
2. Press  and then tap **Call settings** → **Additional settings**.
3. In a single motion, drag the slider to the right of the **Auto area code** field to turn it on .
4. Tap **Auto area code**, enter a new prefix, and then tap **OK**.

## Fixed Dialing Numbers

Fixed Dial Number (FDN), allows you to restrict outgoing calls to a limited set of phone numbers.

### Enabling FDN

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Phone).
2. Press  and then tap **Call settings** → **Additional settings** → **Fixed Dialing Numbers**.
3. Tap **Enable FDN**.
4. At the prompt, enter your PIN2 code and tap **OK**.



---

**Important!** Not all SIM cards use a PIN2 code. If your SIM card does not, this menu does not display.

The PIN2 code is provided by your carrier. Entering an incorrect PIN2 code three times will cause the phone to lock. Contact customer service for assistance.

---

### Changing the PIN2 Code

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Phone).
2. Press  and then tap **Call settings** → **Additional settings** → **Fixed Dialing Numbers**.
3. Tap **Change P N2**.
4. At the prompt, enter your old PIN2 code.
5. At the prompt, enter a new PIN2 code.
6. Confirm your PIN2 code.

---




**Important!** Not all SIM cards use a PIN2 code. If your SIM card does not, this menu does not display.

The PIN2 code is provided by your carrier. Entering the PIN2 incorrectly three times will cause the device to lock. Contact customer service for assistance.

---

## Managing the FDN List

When this feature is enabled, you can make calls only to phone numbers stored in the FDN list on the SIM card.

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Phone).
2. Press  and then tap **Call settings** → **Additional settings** → **Fixed Dialing Numbers**.
3. Tap **Enable FDN**.
4. At the prompt, enter your PIN2 code and tap **OK**. FDN is enabled.
5. Tap **FDN list** then press  and then tap **Add contact** or edit the contacts that were stored.



---

**Important!** Not all SIM cards use a PIN2 code. If your SIM card does not, this menu does not display.  
The PIN2 code is provided by your carrier. Entering the PIN2 incorrectly three times will cause the device to lock. Contact customer service for assistance.

---



## Voicemail

You can set your voicemail options from this menu.

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Phone).
2. Press  and then tap **Call settings**.
3. Tap one of the following options:
  - **Voicemail service:** Automatically set to **Messages**.
  - **Voicemail settings:** Lets you change the phone number used to access your voicemail.
  - **Ringtone:** Select a tone to play when voicemail is received.
  - **Vibrate:** Choose whether the phone vibrates when voicemail is received.

## Home Screen Mode

This application allows you to set your display to the conventional layout (**Basic mode**) or provide an easier user experience for first-time smartphone users (**Easy mode**).



1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings** →  (Home screen mode).
2. Tap one of the following options:
  - **Basic mode:** provides conventional layout for the apps and widgets on your home screens.

- **Easy mode:** provides easier user experience for first-time smartphone users on the home screens.

### 3. Tap **Apply**.

## Blocking Mode


When Blocking mode is enabled, notifications for selected features will be disabled. You will only receive notifications of incoming calls from people on your allowed list.

1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings**.
2. In a single motion touch and slide the **Blocking mode** slider to the right to turn it on.  
Confirm the Blocking mode active icon  appears in the Status bar.
3. Tap the various fields to place a green checkmark adjacent to those features you would like to enable.  
Choose from: Disable incoming calls, Disable notifications, and Disable alarm and timer.
4. Configure a timeframe for these features to be active.  
Tap the **Always** field to remove the checkmark and configure the **From** and **To** time fields.

5. Tap **Allowed contacts** to assign those contacts that are exempted from these rules. Choose from None, All contacts, Favourites, or Custom.


## Sound Settings

From this menu you can control the sounds on the phone.

- From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings** → **Sound**.


### *Silent mode via Device Options Screen*

Silent mode is convenient when you wish to stop the phone from making noise, in a theater for example. In Silent Mode the speaker is muted and the phone can only vibrate to notify you of incoming calls, or other functions that normally have a defined tone or sound as an alert.


1. From the Home screen, press and hold  (**Power/End**) until **Device options** displays.
2. Tap **Mute** on the Device options screen to disable sound and vibration notification.  
– or –  
Tap **Vibrate** on the Device options screen to allow notification by vibration only.

## Adjusting the Volume Settings

The Volume menu now provides access to various volume settings within one on-screen popup menu.


1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings → Sound → Volume**.
2. Touch and drag the on-screen slider to assign the volume settings for any of the following volume levels.
  - Music, video, games, and other media; Ringtone; Notifications; or System.
3. Tap **OK** to assign the volume levels.

## Setup the Voice Call Ringtone

1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings → Sound**.
2. Tap **Device ringtone**.
3. Tap a ringtone from the available list. The ringtone briefly plays when selected.
  - or –
  - tap **Add** and select an available music file.
4. Tap **OK** to assign a ringtone.


## Setup the Device Vibration

This option allows you to set your vibration pattern.

1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings → Sound**.
2. Tap **Device vibration**.
3. Select a vibration pattern. The pattern briefly plays when selected.
  - or –
  - Tap **Create** and tap the screen in a sequence to create your own vibration pattern then tap **Save**.
4. Tap **OK**.


## Setting a Default Notification Ringtone

This option allows you to set the ringtone that will sound for notifications and alarms.

1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings → Sound → Default notifications**.
2. Tap one of the ringtones and tap **OK**.


## Vibrate When Ringing

This option allows you to activate/deactivate the vibration feature.

1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings → Sound**.
2. Tap the **Vibrate when ringing** field to activate the feature.

### *Audible System Tone Settings*


These options are used when you use the dialing pad, make a screen selection, lock your screen, or tap the screen. Each time you press a key or make a selection the selected tone sounds.

1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings → Sound**.
2. Tap **Dialing keypad tone** to play a tone when you use on-screen keys. A check mark displayed next to these features indicates active status.
3. Tap **Touch sounds** to play a tone when you touch the screen. A check mark displayed next to this feature indicates active status.
4. Tap **Screen lock sound** to play a tone when you use the Lock screen. A check mark displayed next to this feature indicates active status.

## Display Settings

In this menu, you can change various settings for the display such as the font, orientation, pop-up notifications, puzzle lock feature, animation, brightness, screen timeout, and power saving mode.

### *Adjusting the Screen Display*


1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings → Display**.
2. Configure the following screen display settings:
  - **Wallpaper:** allows you to set the Wallpaper for your Home screen, Lock screen, or both.
  - **Page buddy:** allows context related pages to be created on the Home screen. You can select Earphones page, Docking page, and Roaming page. Tap Page buddy help for more information.
  - **Brightness:** adjusts the on-screen brightness level. For more information, refer to “*Adjusting Screen Brightness*” on page 217.



- **Auto-rotate screen:** when enabled, the phone automatically switches between portrait and landscape orientation when rotated. When this setting is disabled, the device displays in portrait mode only.
- **Screen timeout:** adjusts the delay time before the screen automatically turns off. Selections are: 15 seconds, 30 seconds, 1 minute, 2 minutes, 5 minutes, 10 minutes, and 30 minutes.
- **Font style:** sets the fonts used on the LCD display. Selections are: Default font, Choco cooky, Cool jazz, Helvetica S, or Rosemary. Tap Get fonts online to download additional fonts.
- **Font size:** allows you to select the size of font displayed.
- **Touch key light duration:** to adjust the delay before the touch key light turns off when there is no activity.
- **Display battery percentage:** to activate/deactivate the display of battery charge percentage atop the battery icon at the top of the screen.

## Adjusting Screen Brightness

This feature configures the LCD Brightness levels.

1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap Settings → Display → Brightness.


2. Touch and slide the on-screen slider to adjust the level and tap OK.

## SD Card & Device Storage

From this menu you can view the memory used and available for the device and memory card. You can also mount and unmount the SD card.



For more information about mounting or unmounting the SD card, see “Memory Card” on page 48.

To view the available memory:

- From the Home screen, press  and then tap Settings → Storage.  
The available memory displays under the Device memory and USB storage headings.

## Power Saving Mode


This feature allows you to automatically set the phone to use power saving mode and configure power saving settings.

1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap Settings → Power saving mode.
2. Touch and slide the slider to the right to turn it on .

3. Tap the following options to create a check mark and conserve power:
  - **CPU power saving:** allows you to limit the maximum performance of the CPU.
  - **Screen power saving:** allows you to lower the screen power level.
4. Tap **Learn about Power saving mode** to learn more about the power saving options.

## Battery Usage

This option displays the battery power used by various system components and applications. The amount of time the battery has been used since last charged also displays. Battery usage displays in percentage of the total.

1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings → Battery**. The battery level displays in percentage.
2. Tap an entry to view more detailed information.

---

**Note:** Other applications may be running that affect battery use.

---

## Application Manager


You can download and install applications from Play Store or create applications using the Android SDK and install them on your device. Use Application manager settings to manage applications.

---

**Warning!** Because the device can be configured with system software not provided by or supported by Google or any other company, end-users operate these devices at their own risk.

---

You can also view the amount of memory or resources used as well as the remaining memory and resources for each of the applications on your phone and clear the data, cache, or defaults.


- From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings → Application manager**.

## Clearing Application Cache and Data

---

**Important!** You must have downloaded applications installed to use this feature.

---


1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings → Application manager**.
2. Tap an application in which to clear the cache or data.
3. Tap **Clear data** or **Clear cache**.

### Uninstalling Third-party Applications

---


**Important!** You must have downloaded applications installed to use this feature.

---

1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings → Application manager**.
2. Tap the **DOWNLOADED** tab and select your desired application.
3. Tap **Uninstall**.
4. At the prompt, tap **OK** to uninstall the application.
5. Select a reason for uninstalling the application, then tap **OK**.

### Running Services

The Running services option allows you to view and control currently running services such as Backup, Google Talk, SNS (messaging), Swype, and more.

1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings → Application manager**.
2. Tap the **RUNNING** tab to view all currently active and running applications. This tab also shows the total RAM being used by these currently active applications.
3. To end a process and stop it from running, tap the process and select **Stop**. When you stop the process the service or application will no longer run until you start the process or application again.
4. Tap **Show cached processes** to view additional cached applications.


---


**Important!** Stopping a process might have undesirable consequences on the application.

---

### Storage Used

This option allows you to view a list (on the current tab) of current applications sorted by size.

1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings → Application manager**.
2. Tap the **ALL** tab to display all available applications.

3. Press  and then tap **Sort by size** to change the current list to show items based on the amount of storage they occupy.

## Location Services

Location services allows you to configure how the device determines your location.


---

**Important!** The more location determining functions are enabled, the more accurate the determination will be of your position.

---


### Using Wireless Networks

Location determined by Wi-Fi and/or mobile networks.

1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings → Location services**.
2. Tap **Use wireless networks** allows apps to use data from sources such as Wi-Fi and mobile networks to determine an approximation of your current location.

### Enabling the GPS Satellites

Determines your location accurately to street level.

1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings → Location services**.

2. Tap **Use GPS satellites** to enable the GPS satellite.


---

**Note:** GPS requires a clear view of the sky and uses more battery power.

---

### Enabling the Location and Google Search

Allows Google to use your location data for improved search results and other services.

1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings → Location services**.
2. Tap **Location and Google search**.

---

**Tip:** When using Google Maps you can turn on **Location and Google search**. Enabling this feature allows you to locate places of interest at the street-level.

---

## Lock Screen

This menu contains features that allows you to configure the device's security parameters.


### *Screen Unlock Pattern Overview*

To secure data and limit phone access, set the phone to require screen unlocking each time you turn on the device, or every time the phone wakes up from sleep mode (when the screen automatically turns off).

The Screen lock menu allows to choose from several locking methods: **Swipe**, **Face unlock**, **Face and voice**, **Pattern**, **PIN**, **Password**, or **None**.


### *Using Swipe*

This feature is the least secure locking method and only requires that a user swipe the screen to unlock the device.

1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings → Lock screen**.
2. Tap **Screen lock → Swipe**.


## *Using Face Unlock*


This feature uses facial recognition to unlock your phone. This feature is less secure than PIN, Pattern, and Password locks and can be bypassed by someone else who looks similar to you.

1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings → Lock screen**.
2. Tap **Screen lock → Face unlock**.
3. Read the on-screen notification and tap **Next**.
4. From the About Face Unlock screen, tap **Set it up**.
5. Follow the on-screen instructions.

### *Using Face and Voice Unlock*

This feature uses facial and voice recognition to unlock your phone. This feature is less secure than PIN, Pattern, and Password locks and can be bypassed by someone else who looks and sounds similar to you.


1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings → Lock screen**.
2. Tap **Screen lock → Face and voice**.
3. Read the on-screen notification and tap **Next**.
4. From the About Face Unlock screen, tap **Set it up**.

5. Follow the on-screen instructions.
6. When prompted to speak and unlock command, tap  and repeat the phrase four times.
7. Once complete, tap **Done**.

## Setting an Unlock Pattern


Creating a screen unlock pattern increases security on the phone.

The feature is paired with a backup PIN code that acts as a backup to the pattern lock. If you forget your pattern, you can regain access to the device by entering a PIN code.

1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings** → **Lock screen**.
2. Tap **Screen lock** → **Pattern**.
3. Read the instructions then tap **Next**.
4. Draw your pattern by touching your first on-screen point. Then, **without removing your finger from the screen, drag your finger over adjacent points until the gray trace line overlaps each point** and they are highlighted with a green circle.


5. When you have connected at least four dots in a vertical, horizontal or diagonal direction, lift your finger from the screen and tap **Continue**.
6. Confirm the new pattern by redrawing it and then tapping **Confirm**. The Unlock pattern is set.
7. Enter the backup PIN code and tap **Continue**.
8. Reenter the PIN to reconfirm the previous entry and tap **OK**.

To see the pattern on the screen as you trace it with your finger:

1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings** → **Lock screen**.
2. Tap the selection box beside **Make pattern visible**.


## Changing the Screen Lock Pattern

This feature allows you to change the previously stored unlock pattern and update it if necessary. This process is similar to changing your password from time to time.

1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings** → **Lock screen**.
2. Tap **Screen lock**.
3. Retrace your current pattern on the screen.

4. Tap **Pattern** and repeat steps 3 - 8 from the previous section.

### *Deleting the Screen Lock Pattern*

1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings** → **Lock screen**.
2. Tap **Screen lock**.
3. Retrace your current pattern on the screen.
4. Tap **None**.

### *What If I Forget my Pattern?*

If you forget your device's lock pattern, you can unlock your device or reset it using your Google™ Account credentials. When you enter the wrong unlock pattern too many times, you should see an option at the bottom of the screen that says **Forgot pattern?** Follow these steps to use either your PIN or email address.

---

**Important!** You can only enter an incorrect lock pattern 5 times before the device is locked.

---

---

**Important!** If you are unsuccessful in retrieving your lock pattern or unlocking your device, please contact your service provider for assistance.

---

#### **To unlock your device with a PIN code:**


1. Tap **Forgot pattern?** (located at the bottom of the screen).
2. Scroll down and tap the **Type P N code** field and use the on-screen keypad to enter the backup PIN code you setup when you created your lock pattern.
3. Tap **OK**.
4. If you have forgotten your current pattern, tap **Pattern** from the Screen unlock settings menu and follow the procedures outlined in "*Setting an Unlock Pattern*" on page 222 to create a new pattern.

#### **To unlock your device using your Google account:**


1. Tap **Forgot pattern?** (located at the bottom of the screen).

2. Tap the **Username (email)** and **Password** fields, use the on-screen keyboard to enter your Google Account credentials, and tap **Sign in** to complete the login process.
3. If you have forgotten your Google Account credentials, visit the Google website to recover them. If you still cannot get your Google Account credentials, contact your wireless carrier for additional options.

### *PIN Lock and Unlock*

1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings → Lock screen**.
2. Tap **Screen lock → P N**.
3. Enter a PIN number using the numeric keypad and touch **Continue** to confirm the password.
4. Confirm the PIN by re-entering it and tap **OK** to confirm. Your phone now requires you to enter this PIN number in order to unlock the phone.


### *Password Lock and Unlock*

1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings → Lock screen**.
2. Tap **Screen lock**.

3. Tap **Password**.
4. Enter a password using the keypad and tap **Continue** to confirm the password.
5. Confirm the password by re-entering it and tap **OK** to confirm.

### *Samsung Unlock Options*

Activate or deactivates various Unlock screen functions.

1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings → Lock screen → Lock screen options**.
2. Tap **Lock screen options** and choose from:
  - **Shortcuts** sets shortcuts to appear at the bottom of the Lock screen.
  - **Information ticker** sets the news and stock information ticker to appear across the bottom of the Lock screen.
  - **Clock** allows you to display the digital clock while the Lock screen is active. Enabled by default.
  - **Dual clock** displays a dual digital clock on the Lock screen while you are traveling. Tap the entry to set your home city. This time zone then becomes the time used by one of these on-screen clocks.



- **Weather** displays the current area weather on the Lock screen. Tap and set both the temperature units (F or C) and a refresh time.
- **Help text** shows help information on the Lock screen.
- **Wake up in lock screen** requires that you say a wake-up command when Swipe unlock is enabled.
- **Set wake-up command** designates your wake-up commands for S-Voice and other functions. Tap a function and follow the on-screen prompts to create a new verbal command.

---

**Note:** These options vary depending on the selected Lock settings.

---

## Customizing Your Lock Screen Shortcuts


Your device also provides three shortcuts that can be used to quickly access applications right from the lock screen.


---

**Important!** To use these shortcuts, your Screen Lock feature can only be set to either Swipe or None.

---

To enable and edit Lock screen shortcuts:

1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap Settings → Lock screen → Lock screen options.

2. In a single motion touch and slide the **Shortcuts** slider to the right to turn it on.
3. Tap the **Shortcuts** field to activate the menu.
4. Tap a shortcut icon you wish to replace.
5. From the select application menu, tap a replacement application.
6. Press  to return to the previous screen.

To open a shortcut from the lock screen:

- In a single motion, swipe your finger over the on-screen icon and towards the top of your device. Your device will unlock and you will be taken immediately to the application.

## Using a Visible Pattern

When the **Make pattern visible** option is enabled, the device displays the on-screen lock grid that is used for unlocking.

---

**Note:** This option only appears when a screen lock option is active.

---

## Locking Automatically

This option allows you to define the time delay before the device automatically locks when the screen turns off.

---

**Note:** This option only appears when a screen lock option is active.

---

## Lock Instantly with Power Key

When enabled, the screen is automatically locked when the Power/Lock key is pressed.

---

**Note:** This option only appears when a screen lock option is active.

---

## Vibrate on Screen Tap

When enabled, you will feel vibration as feedback when entering an unlock pattern, PIN or password.



---

**Note:** This option only appears when a screen lock option is active.

---

## Owner Information

This option allows you to show user-defined information on the Lock screen.


1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings → Lock screen → Owner information**.
2. Tap the **Show owner info on lock screen** checkbox to create a checkmark if you want your information displayed.
3. Enter the text that you would like displayed on your Lock screen.
4. Press  twice to save the new text and return to the previous screen.

## Security

The Security settings allow you to set the security options for your device.

### Encrypt Device

When enabled, this feature requires a numeric PIN or password to decrypt your phone each time you power it on or decrypt the data on your SD card each time it is connected.

1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings → Security**.
2. Tap **Encrypt device**. For more information, read the displayed help screen.
3. Tap **Encrypt external SD card** to enable encryption of SD card data.

---

**Tip:** Make sure your battery is charged more than 80 percent or the charger is attached. Encryption may take an hour or more.



---

## Find my mobile

### Remote controls


Remote controls uses the SamsungDive service to track and control your device remotely. Also, using the Find my mobile feature, you can find your missing phone. See [www.samsungdive.com](http://www.samsungdive.com) for more information.

To enable remote controls:


1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings → Security → Remote controls**.
2. Tap **OK**.
3. Tap the ON/OFF slider  to turn Remote controls on.

### SIM Change Alert

SIM Change Alert sends an SMS message to preset phone numbers if your phone is ever turned on with a different SIM card in it.

1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings → Security → SIM Change Alert**.
2. Tap **Sign in** and sign in to your Samsung account.  
– or –

Tap **Create new account** and set up a Samsung account.

3. Tap the ON/OFF slider  to turn SIM Change Alert on.
4. Tap **Alert message**, enter the message to be sent, and tap **OK**.
5. Tap **Create** to enter the phone number to receive the SMS message or **Contacts** to select a number from your contact list.
6. Enter the number and tap **OK**, or select the number and tap **Done**.
7. Tap **Save**.

---

**Note:** Requires a Samsung account.

---


### Find my mobile web page

Opens the SamsungDive web page ([www.samsungdive.com](http://www.samsungdive.com)) where you can find more information and sign up for the service.

### Setting up SIM Card Lock

Prevent another user from using your SIM card to make unauthorized calls or from accessing information stored on your SIM card by protecting the information using a PIN code.

When enabled, your phone will ask for a PIN number each time you use the phone. Using this option you can also change your SIM PIN number.

1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings** → **Security**.
2. Tap **Set up SIM card lock**.
3. Tap **Lock SIM card**, enter your SIM PIN code, then tap **OK**.

---

**Note:** You must activate Lock SIM card before you can change your SIM PIN code.


---

#### To change an existing SIM Card PIN:

1. Tap **Change S M PIN**.
2. Enter the old SIM PIN code and tap **OK**.
3. Enter the new SIM PIN code and tap **OK**.
4. Re-type the new SIM PIN code and tap **OK**.


## Password Settings

When you create a phone password you can also configure the phone to display the password as you type it instead of using an asterisk (\*).

1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings → Security**.
2. Tap **Make passwords visible** to activate this feature.


## Device Administration

Activating this feature provides support for enterprise applications by providing device administration features at the system level. These security-aware applications allow rich control over employee devices by IT departments.

1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings → Security**.
2. Tap **Device administrators** to begin configuring this setting.
3. Select an administrator device and follow the prompts.

## Unknown Sources

Before you can download applications from locations other than Play Store, you must enable the Unknown sources feature.

1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings → Security**.
2. Tap **Unknown sources** to activate this feature.


---

**Note:** If you are notified that you can not download a Play Store application because it comes from an “Unknown source”, enabling this option corrects this issue.

---


## Credential Storage

This option allows certain applications to access secure certificates and other credentials. Certificates and credentials can be installed to the SD card and password protected.

1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings → Security**.
2. Tap **Trusted credentials** to display only trusted CA certificates. A check mark displayed next to the feature indicates secure credentials.
3. Tap **Install from device storage** to install encrypted certificates from the USB Storage location.
4. Tap **Clear credentials** to clear the device (SD card or phone memory) of all certificate contents and reset the credentials password.


## Language and Input Settings

This setting allows you to configure the language in which to display the menus. You can also set on-screen keyboard options.


- From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings → Language and input**.

### Language Settings

To set the language that the menus display on the phone:

1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings → Language and input → Language**.
2. Select a language from the list.



### Choose Input Method

1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings → Language and input → Default**.
2. Select an input method (Samsung keyboard or Swype).  
– or –

Tap **Set up input methods** to configure the available input methods.

## Swype Settings

For more information, refer to “*Enabling and Configuring SWYPE*” on page 69.

1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings → Language and input**.
2. At the right side of the Swype field, tap .
3. Tap **How to Swype** to view an on-screen manual for Swype.
4. Tap **Gestures** to view an on-screen reference page related to Gesture usage.
5. Tap **Preferences** to alter these settings:
  - **Vibrate on keypress**: activates a vibration sensation as you enter text using the keypad.
  - **Sound on keypress**: turns on sounds generated by the Swype application.
  - **Show helpful tips**: turns on a flashing indicator for quick help.
  - **Auto-spacing**: automatically inserts a space between words. When you finish a word, just lift your finger or stylus and start the next word.
  - **Auto-capitalization**: automatically capitalizes the first letter of a sentence.

- **Show complete trace:** once enabled, sets whether or not to display the complete Swype path.
- **Pop-up on keypress:** once enabled, displays a character above an on-screen key while typing.
- **Next word prediction:** once enabled, predicts the next word in your text string based on your current text entries.

---

**Note:** If incorrect words are being entered as you type, disabled this feature.

---

- **Reset Swype's dictionary:** once enabled, deletes any words you have added to Swype's dictionary.
  - **Version:** displays the software version information.
6. Tap **Language Options** to activate and select the current text input language. Default language is US English.
- **Living language:** allows you to automatically update Swype with popular new words. Tap **Accept** to continue the process

---




**Note:** To use Swype Connect, you must have an active data connection available (network or Wi-Fi).

---

7. Tap **Swype Connect** to activate social media personalization and configure data settings.
- **Register now:** allows you register for the Swype Connect service which allows you to backup your Swype dictionary and sync your Swype dictionary across multiple devices.
    - Follow the on-screen instructions to backup and sync your dictionary based on an email address.
    - Enter the activation code received after your email has been confirmed.
  - **Backup & Sync:** when active, allows you to backup your Swype dictionary and sync your Swype dictionary across multiple devices.
  - **Contribute usage data:** when enabled, allows the Nuance<sup>®</sup> application to collect usage data for better word predictions.
  - **Cellular data:** when enabled, activates cellular data usage by the Swype application so it can receive program updates, language downloads, and other related features via your existing data connection.

8. Tap **Personalization** to access and manage your personal dictionary. Log into the available accounts to add help personalize your personal dictionary with commonly used words or names from your available accounts.
  - **Edit Dictionary**: allows you to edit your current personal Swype dictionary.
  - **Facebook**: allows you to log into your current Facebook account from where contact names are added to your Swype's personal dictionary for later use when you enter names into text fields. Helps recognize familiar names.
  - **Twitter**: allows you to sign into your existing Twitter account from where names and words are added to your personal dictionary. Helps recognize familiar names and words.
  - **Gmail**: allows you to sign in to your existing Gmail account from where existing contact information is added to your personal dictionary. Helps recognize familiar names.
9. Tap **Updates** to update the application if new software is available.

### *Samsung Keyboard Settings*



1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings → Language and input**. Adjacent to the **Samsung keyboard** field, tap .  
– or –  
From within an active text entry screen, tap  to reveal the **Samsung keyboard settings** screen.
2. Set any of the following options:
  - **Portrait keyboard types** allows you to choose a keyboard configuration (Qwerty keyboard [default] or 3x4 keyboard).
  - **Input languages** sets the input language. Tap a language from the available list. The keyboard is updated to the selected language.
  - **Predictive text** enables predictive text entry mode. This must be enabled to gain access to the advanced settings. Touch and hold to access the advanced settings.
  - **Continuous input**: like using Swipe, allows you to enter text by sliding your fingers across the on-screen keyboard. This feature is optimized for use with the on-screen QWERTY keyboard.




- **Keyboard swipe** lets you sweep the keyboard to switch between letter and symbol entry (ABC and ?123 modes).
- **Voice input** display the voice entry button on the keyboard.
- **Auto capitalization** automatically capitalizes the first letter of the first word in each sentence (standard English style).
- **Auto spacing** automatically inserts spaces between words.
- **Auto-punctuate** automatically inserts a full stop in a sentence by tapping the space bar twice when using the on-screen QWERTY keyboard.
- **Character preview** provides an automatic preview of the current character selection within the text string. This is helpful when multiple characters are available within one key.
- **Key-tap sound** enables auditory feedback when you tap an on-screen key.
- **Tutorial** launches a brief on-screen tutorial covering the main concepts related to the Samsung keyboard.
- **Reset settings** resets the keyboard settings back to their original configuration.


## Using Predictive Text

Predictive text system has next-letter prediction and regional error correction, which compensates for pressing the wrong keys on QWERTY keyboards.

1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings** → **Language and input** →  (adjacent to the **Samsung keyboard** field).




– or –

From within an active text entry screen, tap  to reveal the **Samsung keyboard settings** screen.

2. In a single motion touch and slide the **Predictive text** slider to the right to turn it on .
3. Tap the **Predictive text** field and configure any of the following advanced options:
  - **Personalized data** activate this feature to use the personal language data that you have entered and selected to make your text entry prediction results better. By enabling this feature you can choose from the following personalization features:
  - **Learn from Gmail** allows you to sign in to your existing Gmail account and add used text to your personal dictionary.



- **Learn from Facebook** allows you to log into your current Facebook account and add used text to your personal dictionary.
  - **Learn from Twitter** allows you to sign into your existing Twitter account and add used text to your personal dictionary.
  - **Learn from Messaging** allows your device to learn your messaging style by using your Messaging information.
  - **Learn from Contacts** updates predictive style by learning your Contacts style.
  - **Clear personalized data** removes all personalized data entered by the user.
4. Press  to return to the previous screen.

## *Configure Google Voice Typing*

1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings** → **Language and input**.  
– or –  
From a screen where you can enter text, in a single motion, touch and drag the Status bar down to the bottom of the screen, then select  (**Choose input method**) → **Set up input methods**.
2. Tap  (adjacent to the **Google voice typing** field).
3. To manually select one or more languages, tap **Choose input languages**.
4. Remove the check mark from the **Automatic** field.
5. Select the desired languages.
6. Activate **Block offensive words** to block recognition of known offensive words or language. (A green check mark indicates the feature is active).
7. Tap **Download offline speech recognition** to enable speech recognition via locally stored files so you can still use the service when you are not connected to a network.



## Configuring Voice Input Recognition


This feature allows the device to correctly recognize verbal input.

1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings → Language and input → Voice search**.
2. Configure the available options to alter the settings associated with this feature:
  - **Language:** Choose a language for your voice input.
  - **Speech output:** Sets whether you will use speech output always or only when using hands-free.
  - **Block offensive words:** Enable or disable blocking of recognized offensive words from the results of your voice-input Google searches.
  - **Download offline speech recognition:** Enables voice input while offline.
  - **Bluetooth headset:** Record audio through Bluetooth headset if available.
3. Press  to return to the previous screen.

## Configuring Text-to-speech


This feature allows the device to provide a verbal readout of on-screen data such as messages and incoming caller information. This action is called TTS (Text To Speech).

1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings → Language and input → Text-to-speech output**.
2. Select a Preferred TTS engine from the list of available options. The default is Google Text-to-speech.
3. Tap  to configure the engine's settings.
4. Configure the General options to alter the settings associated with this feature:
  - **Speech rate:** adjusts the rate at which on-screen text is spoken by the device. Choose from: **Very slow**, **Slow**, **Normal**, **Fast**, and **Very fast**.
  - **Listen to an example:** plays a short example of what the text-to-speech feature sounds like on your device when activated.

- **Driving mode:** incoming calls and new notifications are automatically read out loud. In a single motion touch and slide  to the right to turn it on.
  - Once active, tap the Driving mode field to reveal the associated settings.
  - Select those applications that will use TTS while driving mode is activated. Choose from: Incoming call, Message, New emails, New voicemail, Alarm, Schedule, or Unlock screen.


### Configuring the Mouse-TrackPad

This feature allows you to configure the pointer speed for the mouse/trackpad.

1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings → Language and input → Pointer speed**.
2. Adjust the slider and tap **OK**.


## Back up and Reset

Configure backup settings or reset the phone to factory default settings and content.

- From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings → Backup and reset**.

### Mobile Backup and Restore



The device can be configured to back up your current settings, application data and settings.

1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings → Backup and reset**.
2. Tap **Back up my data** to create a backup of your current phone settings and applications.
3. Tap **Backup account** to assign the account being backed up.
4. Tap **Automatic restore** to automatically restore backed-up settings and data when reinstalling an application.
5. Tap **Factory data reset** to reset all settings to the factory default settings and delete all data stored in the device. For more information, refer to *"Factory Data Reset"* on page 237.



## Prior to doing a Factory Reset

Before initiating a factory reset, it is recommended that you backup your personal data.

To export a Contact list to your microSD card:


1. From the Home screen, tap  (Contacts).
2. Press  and then tap **Import/Export**.
3. Tap **Export to SD card** → **OK**. For more information, refer to “Export/Import” on page 98.

Verify your images and videos are on your microSD card:

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Gallery).
2. Verify the Gallery contains all of your pictures and videos.
3. Remove both the back cover and remove the internal microSD card prior to initiating the process.

## Factory Data Reset

From this menu you can reset your phone settings to the factory default.

1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings** → **Backup and reset**.
2. Tap **Factory data reset**. This action erases all data from your device. It does not erase current system software, bundled applications, or SD card files such as music or photos.

---

**Note:** This feature provides an option to format the internal USB storage, not the microSD card.


---

3. Tap **Reset device** → **Erase everything**.

## Add Account

This menu allows you to set up, manage, and synchronize accounts, including your Google and email accounts.

### *Adding an Account*


1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings** and then navigate to the **Accounts** area.
2. Tap **Add account** and select one of the account types.
3. Use the keyboard and follow the prompts to enter your credentials and set up the account.
4. A green button will appear next to the account type once you have created an account. Your accounts will also be displayed in the **Accounts** section of the main Settings menu.

## Removing an Account

---


**Important!** Removing an account also deletes all of its messages, contacts, and other data from the device.

---

1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings** and then navigate to the **Accounts** area.
2. Tap the account name.
3. From the Accounts area of the screen, tap the account name.
4. Tap **Remove account**, then tap **Remove account** at the prompt to remove the account and delete all its messages, contacts, and other data.

## Synchronizing a Accounts

By default, all managed accounts are synchronized. You can also manually sync all current accounts.

1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings** and then navigate to the **Accounts** area.
2. Tap the account type.
3. Tap **Sync all** to synchronize all your accounts of the same type.



– or –

Tap an account name. Tap selection boxes next to the available account components to add or remove checkmarks that indicate the component will be synchronized (for example, a Gmail account can sync Calendar, Contacts, Gmail, Google Photos, and more). Tap **Sync now** to synchronize the account.

## Motion Settings

This feature allows you to assign specific functions to certain phone actions that are detected by both the accelerometer and gyroscope.

To activate motion:

1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings** → **Motion**.
2. Touch and slide the **Motion** slider to the right to turn it on .

---

**Note:** If Motion activation is not enabled, all motion services are greyed-out and disabled.


---

3. Tap **Motion** to activate the different motion functions:
  - **Shake to update:** Once enabled, shake your device to rescan for Bluetooth devices, rescan for Wi-Fi devices, Refresh a Web page, etc.
  - **Turn over to mute/pause:** Once enabled, mute incoming calls and any playing sounds by turning the device over display down on a surface. This is the opposite of the pickup to be notified gesture.
  - **Learn about Motions:** lets you try the motion functions.

For more information, refer to “*Using Gestures*” on page 39.

## Accessory


This menu allows you to configure options when the device is docked.

1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings → Accessory**.
2. Tap **Dock sound** to play sounds when inserting or removing the phone from the dock.
3. Tap **Audio output mode** to use the external dock speakers when the phone is docked.
4. Tap **Desk home screen display** to display the desk home screen when the phone is docked.

## Date and Time

This menu allows you to change the current time and date displayed.

To automatically maintain the time and date:

1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings → Date and time**.
2. Tap **Automatic data and time** to allow the network set the date and time.
3. Tap **Automatic time zone** to place a checkmark in the selection box and allow the network set the time zone.

---

**Important!** Deactivate **Automatic data and time** to manually set the rest of the options.

---

To manually set the time and date:

1. Tap **Automatic date and time** and **Automatic time zone** to remove checkmarks from the selection boxes and disable automatic setting of the date and time.
2. Tap **Set date** and use the arrows to set the **Month**, **Day**, and **Year** then tap **Set**.
3. Tap **Set time** and use the arrows to set **Hour**, **Minute** and **PM** or **AM**, then tap **Set**.



4. Tap **Select time zone**, then tap a time zone.
5. To use 24-hour time format rather than the default 12-hour format, tap **Use 24-hour format**.
6. Tap **Select date format** and select the date format type.


## Accessibility Settings

This service lets you enable and disable downloaded accessibility applications that aid in navigating your Android device, such as TalkBack (uses synthesized speech to describe the results of actions), KickBack (provides haptic feedback for actions), and SoundBack (plays sounds for various actions). Also lets you enable use of the power key to end calls.

---

**Note:** You can download accessibility applications from Play Store and manage their use here.

---



1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings** → **Accessibility**.
2. Select the **Auto-rotate screen** field to activate this feature which automatically rotates an available screen.
3. Tap **Screen timeout** to timeout the accessibility feature after a defined amount of time.

4. Tap **Lock automatically** to lock the screen automatically after a selected amount of time.

---

**Note:** The Lock automatically function is only available if your device is already using the screen lock feature.

---

5. Select the **Speak passwords** field to activate this feature which reads out password information.
6. Select **Answering/ending calls** field to activate this feature which uses either the  key or the  to end any current calls.
7. Tap **Accessibility shortcut** to allow the accessibility shortcut under the device options to be used by pressing and holding the power key.
8. Tap **TalkBack** to activate the feature.

---

**Note:** TalkBack, when installed and enabled, speaks feedback to help blind and low-vision users.

---

9. Tap the **Font Size** field to change the size of the fonts used on the device within menus, options, etc. Choose from: Tiny, Small, Normal, Large, or Huge.

10. Tap the **Text-to-speech output** field to configure the text to speech configuration parameters.
11. Tap the **Enhance web accessibility** field to allow apps to install scripts from Google that make their Web content more accessible.
12. Tap the **Mono audio** field to enable stereo audio to be compressed into a single mono audio stream for use with a single earbud/earphone.
13. Tap the **Turn off all sounds** field to mute every sound made by the device during taps, selections, notifications, etc.
14. Tap the **Tap and hold delay** field to select a time interval for this action. Choose from: Short, Medium, or Long.

## Developer Options

Use the Developer options to set options for application development.

---

**Important!** These features are used for development purposes only.


---

1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings → Developer options**.
2. The following options are available:
  - **Desktop backup password:** Allows you to protect your desktop with a backup password ID.
  - **Stay awake:** with the Stay awake option enabled, your screen will never sleep while you are charging the device.
  - **Protect SD card:** Requires apps to ask your permission before accessing data on your SD card.
  - **USB debugging:** Allows debugging when the device is attached to a PC by a USB cable.
  - **Allow mock locations:** Used by developers when developing location-based applications.
  - **Select debug app:** Allows developers to select a specific app to debug.

- **Wait for debugger:** Specified apps must have debugger attached before executing.
- **Show touches:** Displays touch interactions on the screen.
- **Show pointer location:** Highlights the data that was touched on the screen.
- **Show layout boundaries:** Displays clip bounds, margins, etc.
- **Show GPU view updates:** Flashes views inside windows when drawn with GPU.
- **Show screen updates:** Forces areas of the screen to flash as it is updated.
- **Window animation scale:** Configure the scale for animation (ranges from off to 10x).
- **Transition animation scale:** Configure the scale for transitioning when using animation (ranges from off to 10x).
- **Animator duration scale:** Configure the scale for duration when using animation (ranges from off to 10x).
- **Disable hardware overlays:** Assigns the work of rendering to the GPU.
- **Force GPU rendering:** Uses a 2D acceleration in applications.
- **Strict mode:** Makes the screen flash when applications perform long operations on the main thread.
- **Show CPU usage:** Screen highlights the current CPU usage.
- **Profile GPU rendering:** Allows you to set the adb shell to measure rendering.
- **Enable traces:** Enables/disables on-screen tracing based on an available parameter.
- **Do not keep activities:** Destroys every activity as soon as the application is closed.
- **Limit background processes:** Sets the number of processes that can run in the background.
- **Show all ANRs:** Displays a prompt when applications running in the background are not responding.

## USB Debugging

When enabled, allows debugging when the device is attached to a PC by a USB cable.

1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings → Developer options**.
2. Tap **USB debugging** to enable or disable the setting. When enabled, a check mark appears in the check box.


## Allowing Mock Locations

---

**Note:** This feature is used for development purposes only.


---

Allows the phone to “mock” coordinates when testing GPS applications.

1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings → Developer options**.
2. Verify the **Developer options** are active.
3. Tap **Allow mock locations** to enable or disable the setting. When enabled, a check mark appears in the check box.


## Desktop Backup Password

Protect the desktop with a backup password ID.

1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings → Developer options**.
2. Verify the **Developer options** are active.
3. Tap **Desktop backup password**.
4. In the Settings screen, enter the current full backup password, the new password for full backups, then enter the new password again.

5. Tap **Set backup password** to save the password change.


## Application Options


1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings → Developer options**.
2. Verify the **Developer options** are active.
3. Tap **Do not keep activities** to destroy every activity as soon as the application is closed.
4. Tap **Limit background processes** to set the number of processes that can run in the background. Options are: Standard limit, No background processes, and At most 1, 2, 3 or 4 processes.
5. Tap **Show all ANRs** to display a prompt when applications running in the background are not responding.

## About Device

This menu contains legal information, system tutorial information, and other phone information such as the model number, firmware version, baseband version, kernel version, and software build number.

To access phone information:

- From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings → About device**. The following information displays:
  - **Software update:** allows you to connect to the network and upload any new phone software directly to your device.
  - **Status:** displays the battery status, the battery level (percentage), the Network connection, Signal strength, Mobile network type, Service state, Roaming status, Mobile network state, My phone number, IMEI number, IMEI SV, IP address, Wi-Fi MAC address, Bluetooth address, Serial number, Up time, and Device status.

- **Legal information:** This option displays information about Open source licenses and Google legal information. This information provides copyright and distribution legal information and facts as well as Google Terms of Service, Terms of Service for Android-powered Phones, and much more pertinent information as a reference. Read the information and terms, then press  to return to the Settings menu.
- **Model number:** displays the device's model number.
- **Android version:** displays the firmware version loaded on this device.
- **Baseband version:** displays the baseband version loaded on this device.
- **Kernel version:** displays the kernel version loaded on this device.
- **Build number:** displays the software build number.

---

**Note:** Firmware, baseband, kernel and build numbers may be required for updates to the handset or support. For additional information please contact your service representative.

---

## Section 12: Health and Safety

---

### Getting the Most Out of Your Reception

#### *Keeping Tabs on Signal Strength*

The quality of each call you make or receive depends on the signal strength in your area. Your phone informs you of the current signal strength by displaying a number of bars next to the signal strength icon. The more bars displayed, the stronger the signal. If you're inside a building, being near a window may give you better reception.

#### *Understanding How Your Phone Operates*

Your phone is basically a radio transmitter and receiver. When it's turned on, it receives and transmits radio frequency (RF) signals. When you use your phone, the system handling your call controls the power level. This power can range from 0.006 watts to 0.2 watts in digital mode.

#### *Maintaining Your Phone's Peak Performance*

There are several simple guidelines for operating your phone properly and maintaining safe, satisfactory service.

- Speak directly into the mouthpiece.

- Avoid exposing your phone and accessories to rain or liquid spills. If your phone does get wet, immediately turn the power off and remove the battery. If it's inoperable, return it to a dealer store or call Customer Support for service.

---

**Note:** For the best care of your phone, only authorized personnel should service your phone and accessories. Faulty service may void the warranty.

---

### Maintaining Safe Use of and Access to Your Phone

Failure to follow the instructions outlined may lead to serious personal injury and possible property damage.

#### *Using Your Phone While Driving*

Talking on your phone while driving (or operating the phone without a hands-free device) is prohibited in some jurisdictions. Laws vary as to specific restrictions. Remember that safety always comes first.

### When using your phone in the car:

- Get to know your phone and its features, such as speed dial and re-dial.
- When available, use a hands-free device.
- Position your phone within easy reach.
- Let the person you are speaking to know you are driving. If necessary, suspend the call in heavy traffic or hazardous weather conditions.
- Do not take notes or look up phone numbers while driving.
- Dial sensibly and assess the traffic. If possible, place calls when stationary or before pulling into traffic.
- Do not engage in stressful or emotional conversations that may divert your attention from the road.
- Dial 911 to report serious emergencies. It's free from your wireless phone.
- Use your phone to help others in emergencies.
- Call roadside assistance or a special non-emergency wireless number when necessary.

---

**Note:** Always turn off the phone in health care facilities and request permission before using the phone near medical equipment.

---

### *Turning Off Your Phone Before Flying*

Turn off your phone before boarding any aircraft. To prevent possible interference with aircraft systems, Transport Canada regulations require you to have permission from a crew member to use your phone while the plane is on the ground. To prevent any risk of interference, regulations prohibit using your phone while the plane is in the air.

### *Turning Off Your Phone in Dangerous Areas*

To avoid interfering with blasting operations, turn off your phone when in a blasting area or in other areas with signs indicating that two-way radios should be turned off. Construction crews often use remote-control RF devices to set off explosives.

**Turn off your phone when you are in an area with a potentially explosive atmosphere. Although it is rare, your phone or its accessories could generate sparks. Sparks**

could cause an explosion or a fire resulting in bodily injury or even death. These areas are often, but not always, clearly marked.

These areas include:

- Fueling areas such as gas stations.
- Below deck on boats.
- Fuel or chemical transfer or storage facilities.
- Areas where the air contains chemicals or particles such as grain, dust, or metal powders.
- Any other area where you would normally be advised to turn off your vehicle's engine.

---

**Note:** Never transport or store flammable gas, liquid, or explosives in the compartment of your vehicle that contains your phone or its accessories.

---

### *Restricting Children's Access to your Phone*

Your phone is not a toy. Children should not be allowed to play with it because they could hurt themselves and others, damage the phone, dial 911 by mistake, or make calls that increase your phone bill.

### *Warning Regarding Display*

The display on your handset is made of glass or acrylic and could break if your handset is dropped or if it receives significant impact. Do not use if screen is broken or cracked as this could cause injury to you.

### *Caring for the Battery*

#### *Protecting Your Battery*

The guidelines listed below help you get the most out of your battery's performance.

- Use only Samsung approved batteries and desktop chargers.  
These chargers are designed to maximize battery life. Using other batteries or chargers voids your warranty and may cause damage.
- In order to avoid damage, charge the battery only in temperatures that range from 32° F to 113° F (0° C to 45° C).
- Don't use the battery charger in direct sunlight or in high humidity areas, such as the bathroom.
- Never dispose of the battery by incineration.
- Keep the metal contacts on top of the battery clean.
- Don't attempt to disassemble or short-circuit the battery.
- The battery may need recharging if it has not been used for a long period of time.



- It's best to replace the battery when it no longer provides acceptable performance. When used correctly, the battery can be recharged hundreds of times before it needs replacing.
- Don't store the battery in high temperature areas for long periods of time. It's best to follow these storage rules:
  - Less than one month:  
-4° F to 140° F (-20° C to 60° C)
  - More than one month:  
-4° F to 113° F (-20° C to 45° C)

### *Disposal of Lithium Ion (Lilon) Batteries*

For safe disposal options of your Lilon batteries, contact your nearest service center.

**Special Note:** Be sure to dispose of your battery properly. In some areas, the disposal of batteries in household or business trash may be prohibited.

---

**Note:** For safety, do not handle a damaged or leaking Lilon battery.

---

## Acknowledging Special Precautions and Industry Canada Notice

### *Cautions*

Any changes or modifications to your phone not expressly approved in this document could void your warranty for this equipment, and void your authority to operate this equipment. Only use approved batteries, antennas, and chargers. The use of any unauthorized accessories may be dangerous and void the phone warranty if said accessories cause damage or a defect to the phone.

Although your phone is quite sturdy, it is a complex piece of equipment and can be broken. Avoid dropping, hitting, bending, or sitting on it.

### *Information to User*

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits of a Class B digital device. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular

installation; if this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient/relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.

Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

---

**Warning!** At very high volumes, prolonged listening to a headset can damage your hearing.

---

### *Specific Absorption Rates (SAR) for Wireless Phones*

The SAR is a value that corresponds to the relative amount of RF energy absorbed in the head of a user of a wireless handset.

The SAR value of a phone is the result of an extensive testing, measuring and calculation process. It does not represent how much RF the phone emits. All phone models are tested at their

highest value in strict laboratory settings. But when in operation, the SAR of a phone can be substantially less than the level reported to Industry Canada. This is because of a variety of factors including its proximity to a base station antenna, phone design and other factors. What is important to remember is that each phone meets strict federal guidelines. Variations in SARs do not represent a variation in safety.

All phones must meet the federal standard, which incorporates a substantial margin of safety. As stated above, variations in SAR values between different model phones do not mean variations in safety. SAR values at or below the federal standard of 1.6 W/kg are considered safe for use by the public.

The highest reported SAR values for the T599V are:

Head: 0.78 W/kg

Body: 1.12 W/kg

This phone has been tested and meets RF exposure guidelines when used with an accessory that contains no metal and that positions the mobile device a minimum of 1.0 cm from the body.

## Owner's Record

The model number, regulatory number, and serial number are located on a nameplate inside the battery compartment.

Record the serial number in the space provided below. This will be helpful if you need to contact us about your phone in the future.

Model: SGH-T599V

Serial No.:

# Index

---

## Numerics

### 2G Network

Using 204

### 2-Sec Pause

Adding 54

### 4G 194

## A

### Accessing

Recently-used applications 41

Voice mail 16

### Accessory 240

Dock Sound 240

Screen Display 240

### Accounts and Sync

Adding Contacts 96

### Add 2-Sec Pause 57, 87, 88

### Add to Favorites 101

### Adjusting

Call volume 61

### Alarm

Deleting an Existing Alarm 154

Setting 153

252

Turning Off 154

### Alarm Tone

Set as 148

### Alerts on Call 208

### Allowing Mock Locations 244

### Android Development 168

### Answering a call 55

### Answering Key

Home Key 208

### Application cache and data

Clearing 169

### Application Menus

Navigating through 40

### Application Screen

Customizing View 43

### Applications 30

Android Development 168

Browser 157

Calculator 31, 151

Calendar 35

Camera 31, 152

ChatON 128

Chrome 31

Clock 31

Contacts 31

Downloads 31

Email 32, 156

Flipboard 32

Gallery 32

Gmail 32, 156

Google 157

Google Search 32

Google Settings 157

Google+ 32

Hide 30

Internet 33

Local 33

Maps 33, 158

Memo 33, 160

Messaging 33, 161

Messenger 33, 127

Music Player 33

My Files 34

Navigation 34

- Phone 34
- Play Books 34
- Play Magazines 34
- Play Movies 34
- Play Music 35
- Play Store 35
- Polaris Office 4.0 169
- S Planner 170
- S Voice 35
- Samsung Apps 35
- Settings 36
- Sharing with Others 44
- Show Hidden 30
- Shutting Down 17
- Storage Used 219
- Talk 126
- Using the Camcorder 137
- Using the Camera 130
- Video Hub 173
- Video Player 36, 173
- Voice Recorder 36, 173
- Voice Search 36
- YouTube 36, 174

## **Applications and Development 151**

- Applications settings**
  - allow mock locations 243
- Apps**
  - Adding 29
- Area Code**
  - Auto Assign 211
- Audio**
  - Output Mode 240
- Auto Redial 211**
- Auto Reject**
  - Configuration 56
- Auto Reject List 207**
- Auto Reject Mode 207, 208**
- Auto Sync App Data 89**
- Automatic Answering 208**
- Automatic Restore 236**

## **B**

- Back up**
  - My Account 236
  - My Data 236

## **Backup and Restore 236**

- Basic Mode 44, 213**
- Battery**
  - Charging 7
  - Display Percentage 9, 217
  - Extending Life 9
  - Installing 5
  - Low Battery Indicator 9
  - Removal 5
  - Wall Charger 7
- Battery Care 248**
- Battery Cover**
  - Removal 2
  - Replace 3
- Battery Life**
  - Extending 9
- Battery Usage 218**
- Bigger Font**
  - Setting 241
- Bing**
  - Set Search Engine 183
- Blacklist**
  - Adding 90

## **Blocking Mode** 214

On 214

## **Bluetooth** 200

About 184

Change Name 185

Deleting a Paired Device 187

Device Name 200

Headset Settings-Outgoing Calls

208

Off 185, 200

On 184

Outgoing Headset Condition 210

Pairing Devices 186

Review Downloaded Files 186

Scan for Devices 186

Scanning for other Devices 200

Sending Contact Information 187

Sending Contacts Via 187

Sending Namecard 94

Set Visibility 185

Settings 185

Status indicators 185

Switching to Headset during call

62

Turning on and off 184, 200

Visibility 200

Visible Time-Out 186

## **Browser**

Adding bookmarks 180

Deleting bookmarks 181

Easier to Read Pages 183

Emptying cookies 181

Entering a URL 178

Inverted Display 183

Navigation 177

Options 177

Quick Controls 184

Search Engine 183

Settings 182

## **Bubble**

Options 109

## **Buddy Photo Share** 131

## **C**

## **Calculator**

Scientific Functions 151

## **Calendar**

Creating an event 170

Settings 171

Sync 170

## **Call**

Settings 55

## **Call Alert** 208

Call Vibrations 208

## **Call Answering/Ending** 208

## **Call Barring** 211

## **Call Forwarding** 208

Configuring 211

## **Call Functions** 51

Answering 55

Background Calling 52

Ending 52

Ending a Call 52

Ending via Status Bar 53

Making a Multi-Party Call 63

Pause Dialing 57

Redialing the last number 57

Wait dialing 57

## **Call Functions**

Vibrate 209

## **Call Log**

Accessing from Notifications 66

Erasing 67

- Call Rejection** 55, 207
- Call Settings** 207
  - Additional Settings 211
  - General 207
- Call Status Tones** 208
- Call Vibrations** 208
- Call Volume**
  - Adjusting 61
  - Extra Volume 61
- Call Waiting** 64, 211
- Caller ID** 211
- Caller Ringtone**
  - Set as 148
- Calls**
  - Auto Reject 207, 208
  - Making a 51
  - Multi-party 63
  - Muting 62
  - Set Accessory Options 208
- Camcorder** 137
  - Accessing the Video Folder 140
  - Options 138
  - Shooting Video 137

- Camera** 129
  - Camera Options 131
  - Default Storage Location 133
  - Taking Pictures 130
- Charging battery** 7
- ChatON** 128
  - Buddy photo share 135, 136
- Clearing**
  - Application cache and data 169
- Clock** 224
- Configuration**
  - Initial 10
- Connections**
  - Accessing the Internet 177
- Contact**
  - Copying to microSD Card 95
  - Copying to SIM Card 94
  - Creating a New 82
  - Joining 91
  - New From Keypad 84
- Contact Entry**
  - Options 90
- Contact List**
  - Options 88

- Contact Menus**
  - Options 89
- Contacts**
  - Adding a Number to Existing 87
  - Adding a Pause or Wait 87
  - Adding Your Facebook Friends 97
  - Additional Options 98
  - Deleting 88
  - Display Options 96, 98
  - Displaying Contacts by Name 98
  - Export List to microSD 188, 237
  - First Name 98
  - Groups 99
  - Last Name First 98
  - Merge with Google 89
  - Merge with Samsung Account 89
  - Reject List 90
  - Sending All 93
  - Setting Default Location 89
  - Settings 98
  - Share Namecard Via 90
  - Sharing Settings 99
  - Sharing/Sending 93

- Contacts List 51
- Context Menus 87, 89
  - Navigation 41
  - Using 41
- Continuous input 78, 232
  - see Swype 232
- Cookies
  - Emptying 181
- Copying Contact 94
- CPU Usage
  - Display 243
- Create Folder
  - Group Apps 30
- Creating a Playlist 149
- Creating and sending
  - Messages 103
- Customizable Grid 43
- Customizing
  - Home screens 42

**D**

- Data Roaming 203
  - Activate/Deactivate 203
- Date
  - Selecting Format 241

256

- Date and Time 240
- Default Notifications
  - Settings 215
- Default Storage
  - Assigning 129
  - Camcorder 14, 129, 139
  - Camera 14, 129
  - Camera Storage 133
- Deleting
  - Multiple Messages 109
  - Single Bubble 110
  - Single Message 109
- Deleting a contact 88
- Desk Clock 153
  - Configuring 155
- Desktop Backup Password 244
- Device Options
  - Screen 214
- Display
  - Icons 22
  - Settings 21
  - Status Bar 21

- Displaying your phone number 51
- Dock
  - Sound 240
- Downloading
  - New application 167
- Downloads 155
  - Internet Downloads 155
  - Other Downloads 155
- Draft Messages 104

**E**

- Easy Mode 44, 214
- EDGE Network 204
- Edit Page 42
- Email 115
  - Changing Signature 117, 122
  - Composing 116
  - Configuring Settings 117
  - Creating an Internet Account 115
  - Internet Email 115
  - Opening 116
  - Refreshing Messages 116
  - Sending 98
  - Wi-Fi Download of Attachments 118, 123



## **Emergency Calls**

Making 53

With SIM 53

Without SIM 53

## **Emoticons 105**

## **Ending**

A call 52

## **Entering Text 68**

Using SWYPE 69

## **Erasing files from**

Memory card 49

## **Exchange Email 119**

Account Setup 119

Composing 121

Configuring Settings 122

Deleting Message 122

Opening 121

Refreshing Messages 121

## **Extra Volume 211**

## **F**

## **Face Unlock 221**

## **Facebook**

Predictive Text 80, 234

Swype Connect 71, 232

Sync Calendar 97

Sync Gallery 97

## **Facial Recognition 221**

## **Factory Data Reset**

Prior To 237

## **Factory data reset 237**

## **Favorites Tab 101**

## **Fixed Dialing Numbers 212**

## **Flipboard 156**

## **Folder**

Create 29

Creating and Managing 46

Deleting 46

Renaming 46

## **Font**

Size 217

Style 217

## **Font Size**

Caption 175

Changing 241

Minimum Setting 183

## **Forgot Pattern? 223**

## **G**

## **Gallery**

Folder Options 135

Opening 141

## **Games**

Volume 215

## **Gestures**

Overview 39

Shake to Update 39

## **Getting Started 1**

Battery 5

Battery Cover 2

Locking/Unlocking the Device 12

microSD card 6

SIM Card 3

Switching Device On/Off 11

Voice Mail 15

## **Gmail 124, 156**

Composing a message 125

Creating an Additional Account

126

Opening 124

Other Options 125

- Personalize Swype 71, 232
- Predictive Text 79, 233
- Refreshing 125
- Signing In 124
- Viewing 125
- Google** 157
  - Create New Account 12
  - Merge Contacts 89
  - Retrieving Password 13
  - Set Search Engine 183
  - Signing into Your Account 13
  - Voice Typing 68
- Google Books** 165
- Google Mail**
  - see also Gmail 125
- Google Maps**
  - Enabling a location source 158
  - Opening a map 159
- Google Now** 174
- Google Places**
  - See also Local 157

- Google Search** 17, 157
- Google Settings** 157
- Google Talk** 36, 126, 172
- Google Voice Typing**
  - Configuring 81, 234
  - Using 81
- GPS Tag** 132
- GPU**
  - Force Rendering 243
- Groups**
  - Adding an Member to an Existing Group 100
  - Creating a new caller group 99
  - Deleting 100
  - Deleting a Caller Group 100
  - Editing a Caller Group 100
  - Removing an Entry 100
  - Settings 100
- GSM** 203

## H

- Health and Safety** 246
  - Children 248
  - Dangerous Areas 247
  - Driving 246

- Flying 247
- Hidden Applications**
  - Show 30
- Hold**
  - Placing a call on hold 61
- Home** 27
- Home City**
  - Setting 224
- Home Key** 27
- Home Screen**
  - Assigning a New 43
  - Changing Wallpaper 47
  - Menu Settings 29
  - Overview 27
- Home Screen Mode**
  - Adjusting 43
- Home screens**
  - Customizing 42
- Homepage**
  - Setting New 180
- HSPA+** 194

## I

- Icons**
  - Description 22

- Indicator 22
- Status 22
- Images**
  - Assigning as a Contact icon 136
  - Assigning as wallpaper 136
  - Transferring 189, 237
  - Verifying 189, 237
- Importing and Exporting**
  - To SIM card 98
- In call**
  - Options 60, 62
- Incognito** 179
  - Create Window 179
  - Exit Window 179
- Indicator icons** 22
- Industry Canada** 249
- Information Ticker** 224
- International Calls**
  - Making 56
- Internet** 177
  - Brightness Setting 178
  - Search 178
  - Set New Homepage 180

- Internet Downloads** 155
- IP Address** 245

## J

- Joining**
  - Contact information 91

## K

- Kies Air**
  - Before Using 188

## L

- Language**
  - Select 230
- LDAP** 89
- Live Wallpaper**
  - Selecting 47
- Local** 157
- Location**
  - Settings 160
- Location and Google Search** 159, 163
- Location and Google Services** 220
- Lock Pattern**
  - If I Forgot My Pattern 223
- Lock Screen** 221
  - Changing Wallpaper 47

- Clock** 224
- Customizing Shortcuts** 225
- Dual Clock** 224
- Options** 224, 225
- Say Wake-Up Command** 225
- Shortcuts** 224
- Showing Owner Info** 226
- Ticker** 224
- Using Shortcuts** 225
- Viewing Missed Calls** 67
- Weather** 225

- Logs** 65
  - Accessing 65
- Low battery indicator** 9

## M

- Making**
  - Emergency Calls 53
  - International Calls 56
  - New call 51
- Managing Applications**
  - Clearing Application Cache 218
  - Uninstalling Third-party Applications 219

## **Market**

see Play Store 167

## **Marking contact**

As a default 93

## **Memo**

Options 161

## **Memory card**

Erasing files from the 49

## **Merge Calls 63**

## **Merge with Google 89**

## **Message**

Options 104

Read 107

Register a Number as Spam 108

Reply 108

Thread Options 108

Threads 108

## **Message Search 110**

## **Message threads 108**

## **Messaging**

Adding a Signature 112

Adding Attachments 106

Additional Text 107

Block Unknown Senders 112, 114

Composing Options 105

Creating and sending 103

Creating and Sending Text

Messages 103

Deleting a message 109

Draft 104

Gmail 124

Icons on the Status Bar 102

Insert Smileys 105

Locked 104, 105

Menu Options 104

Options 104

Settings 110

Signing into Gmail 124

Spam 105

Text Templates 114

Types of Messages 102

Viewing new 107

## **Messenger 127**

## **micro SIM Card**

Changing Existing PIN 228

Lock 228

Setting Up Lock 228

## **microSD Card**

Insertion 6

Removal 7

## **Microsoft Exchange 83, 115**

## **Missed Call**

Viewing from Lock Screen 67

## **Mobile Data**

Usage 202

## **Mobile HotSpot**

Activating 194

Connecting 194

## **Mobile Networks 202**

Data Roaming 203

Mobile Data 202

## **Mobile Web 177**

Entering Text in the Mobile Web

Browser 178

Navigating with the Mobile Web

177

Using Bookmarks 179

## **Mono**

Audio Setup 242

- Motion Settings** 239
- Mounting the SD card** 49
- Multi-Party Call** 63
  - Dropping One Participant 64
  - Private conversation 64
  - Setting up 63
- Multi-Tasking**
  - Background Calling 52
- Music** 162
  - Volume 215
- Music App**
  - Adding Songs to Playlists 146
  - Changing Library View 142
  - Changing Settings 143
  - Creating a Playlist 145
  - Deleting a Playlist 146
  - Listening 143
  - Music Application 142
  - Now Playing Screen 144
  - Options While Playing 144
  - Playing 143
  - Playing a Playlist 146
  - Searching for Music 143
  - Tab Options 144

- Music Files**
  - Removing 150
  - Transferring 150
- Music Player**
  - Adding Music 149
  - Creating a Playlist 149
  - Editing a Playlist 150
  - Making a Song a Ringtone 147
  - Options 147
  - Playing Music 147
  - Removing Music 149
  - Settings 148
  - Using Playlists 149

## N

- Namecard**
  - Sending 93
  - Sending All 93
  - Share Via 93
- Navigating**
  - Application Menus 40
  - Sub-Menus 41
  - Through Screens 37
- Navigation**
  - Go Home 164

- Network connection**
  - Adding a new 192
- Network Mode**
  - 2G Network 204
- New applications**
  - Downloading 167
- Non-Play Store Applications** 169
- Notification Bar** 26
  - Using 26
- Notifications**
  - Volume 215
- On/Off Switch** 11
- Organizer**
  - Calculator 151
  - World Clock 154
- Other Downloads** 155
- Out of Office**
  - Message 123
  - Settings 123
- Outgoing calls**
  - Bluetooth Settings 208

## O

- Outlook 115
- Overview
  - Home Screen 27
- Owner Information 226
- Owner's Record 251

**P**

- Page Buddy 216
- Passwords
  - Make Visible 229
- Pause
  - Adding to a Contact 87
- Pause Dialing 57
- Phone
  - Icons 22
  - Switching on/off 11
- Phone number
  - Finding 51
- Phone Ringtone 215
  - Set as 148
- Phone Vibration 215
- Photos
  - Options 134, 135, 140
  - Sharing 134, 135, 140

- Play Books 165
- Play Music 166
- Play Store 167
  - Quick Access 30
- Pointer Speed
  - Configuration 236
- Polaris® Office 35
- Portable HotSpot 194
- Power 26
- Power Saving 26
  - CPU Power 218
  - Learning About 218
  - Screen Power 218
- Power Saving Mode 217
- Predictive Text 78
  - Activation 79, 233
  - Using 79, 233
- Prepend
  - Area Code 212
- Primary Shortcuts 28
  - Adding and Deleting 43
  - Customizing 43
  - Replacing 43

**Q**

- Quick Dialing 52
- Quick Messaging 104

**R**

- Recently-used Applications
  - Accessing 41
- Redialing the last number 57
- Reject Call
  - Rejection Messages 207
- Reject Calls
  - Managing 55
- Reject List
  - Add to 56, 67
  - Adding 90
  - Auto Reject 56
  - Removing 90
- Rejection List
  - Assigning Multiple Numbers 56
  - Assigning Single Numbers 56
- Rejection Messages 207
- Restarting
  - Device 11

**Restore** 236

**Ringtone**

Assigning 208

Device 215

Volume 215

## S

**S Voice**

Set Wake-Up Command 225

Using 59

**Samsung Account**

Creating 14

Merge Contacts 89

**Samsung Keyboard** 75

ABC Mode 77

Changing the Input Type 76

Enabling 75

Settings 78, 232

**Samsung Keypad**

Entering Symbols 78

Settings 78, 232

Symbol/Numeric Mode 78

**SAR** 250

**Save a Number**

From Keypad 84

**Scan for Nearby Devices** 148

**Screen**

Home 27

Navigation 37

**Screen Lock**

Set Up 222

Sounds 216

**Screen Lock Pattern**

Changing 222

Creating 222

Deleting 223

Forgot My Pattern 223

**Screen Rotation**

Auto-Rotate 217

**Screen Timeout** 217

**Screen Unlock**

Face and Voice Unlock 221

Face Unlock 221

Swipe 221

**Screens**

Adding and Deleting 42

Customizing 42

Rearranging 43

**SD card**

Communicating With 49

Mounting the 49

Unmounting 49

**Search Engine** 183

**Sending a Namecard** 93

**Setting an alarm** 153

**Setting up**

Voicemail 15

**Settings** 172, 196

Accessing 196

Browser 182

Contact list 98

Display 21

Enabling the GPS Satellites 220

Enabling Wireless Locations 220

Messaging 110

Wallpaper 47

**Setup**

Initial 10

**Share Application Information** 44

**Shortcuts**

Adding from Application Screen 44

Adding from Home Screen 45

- Deleting from a Screen 45
- Managing 44
- Primary 28
- Signal strength** 246
- SIM Card**
  - Importing and Exporting 98
  - Insertion 4
  - Removal 4
- Smart Alarm** 154
- Snooze** 154
  - Repeat 153
- SNS** 96
- Social Network**
  - Adding Facebook Contacts 97
  - Resync 97
- Social Networking**
  - Adding Contacts From 96
- Software Update** 245
- Song**
  - Set as 148
- Sounds**
  - Turn Off All 242
- Spam** 114
  - Accessing Your Spam Folder 114

- Assigning Manually 113
- Assigning Phone Numbers 113
- Block Unknown Numbers 114
- Block Unknown Senders 112, 114
- Manually Register a Number 112
- Match Criteria 113
- Register a Number 105, 108
- Register a Phrase 112
- Registering a Phrase as Spam 113
- Settings 112
- Spam Messages** 105
  - Assigning 105
- Speakerphone**
  - Turning on and off 62
- Specific Absorption Rates** 250
- Speed Dial**
  - Changing an entry 58
  - Making a call 59
  - Removing an entry 59
  - Setting up entries 58
- Status Bar** 21
- Sub-Menus**
  - Navigation 41

- Switching to a Bluetooth**
  - During a call 62
- Swype**
  - 123ABC Mode 73
  - Cellular Data 70, 231
  - Connect 70, 231
  - Connect Registration 70, 231
  - Contribute Usage Data 70, 231
  - Entering Text 69
  - Personal Dictionary 71, 232
  - Preferences 69, 230
  - Reset Dictionary 70, 231
  - Settings 69, 230
  - Updates 71, 232
- Swype Connect**
  - Backup and Sync 70, 231
- System**
  - Volume 215
- System Tone**
  - Settings 216
- T**
- Talk** 126
- Tethering** 205
  - Active Icon 193



- Disconnecting 193
  - see USB Tethering 193
- Text**
  - Adjusting Size 183
  - Minimum Font Size 183
  - Soom Amount on Double Tap 183
- Text Input**
  - Methods 68
  - Selecting Method 68
- Text Templates** 105, 114
  - Create Your Own 114
- Text-to-speech**
  - Configuration 235
- Third-Party Applications** 219
  - Uninstalling 169
- Time Zone**
  - Selecting 241
- Timer**
  - Automatic Answering 208, 210
- Tools**
  - Camera 130
- Touches**
  - Show 243

- TrackPad**
  - Configure 236
- Transferring Music Files** 150
- TTS** 235
- Twitter**
  - Personalize Swype 71, 232
  - Predictive Text 80, 234
- U**
- Understanding Your Device** 18
  - Back View 20
  - Display 21
  - Features 18
  - Front View 19
  - Home 27
- Uninstalling**
  - Third-party applications 169
- Unknown Numbers**
  - Blocking Messages 114
- Unknown Sources** 169
- Unlock**
  - Options 224
  - Using Face 221
  - Using Voice 221

- Unmounting**
  - SD card 49
- Usage**
  - Battery 218
- USB Debugging** 189, 243
- USB Tethering** 193
  - Activating 193, 205
- Use GPS Satellites** 158, 163, 220
- Use Wireless Networks** 158, 163, 220
- Using Bookmarks**
  - Adding Bookmarks 180
  - Deleting a Bookmark 181
  - Editing Bookmarks 180
- V**
- Vibrate** 209
- Vibration**
  - Device 215
- Video**
  - Volume 215
- Video Hub** 173
- Video Player**
  - Sharing Videos 141
- Videos**
  - Default Storage Location 139

- Options 135
- Voice Input Recognition** 235
- Voice mail**
  - Accessing 16
  - Accessing from another phone 16
  - Setting up 15
- Voice Search** 174, 235
- Voice Typing** 68
  - Configuring 81, 234
  - Using 81
- Voicemail** 213
- Volume Settings**
  - Adjusting 215
- VPN**
  - Adding 205
  - Connecting To 206
  - Deleting 206
  - Editing 206
  - Settings 205

## W

- Wait** 57, 87, 88
  - Adding to a Contact 87

- Wait dialing** 57
- Wallpaper**
  - Assign Home 29
  - Home and Lock Screens 47
- Wallpapers**
  - Assigning from Gallery 134, 136
  - Changing 46
  - Changing Lock Screen 47
  - Changing via Settings Menu 47
  - Managing 46
- WCDMA** 203
- Weather**
  - Setting 225
- Web** 177
  - Clear Cookies 182
  - History 181
  - Set Home Page 182
- Web applications**
  - enable downloading 188
- Widget**
  - Adding Widgets 29
- Widgets**
  - Adding and Removing 45
  - Google Talk 36

- Moving to a Different Screen** 46
- Settings** 36, 172
- Stopwatch** 155
- Wi-Fi**
  - About 190
  - Activating 191, 196
  - Advanced settings 192
  - Connecting to 191
  - Deactivating 192
  - Direct Connection 199
  - During Sleep 197
  - MAC Address 197
  - Manually Adding Network 197
  - Manually scan for network 192
  - Off 192
  - On 191, 192, 196
  - Settings 196
  - Status icons 191
- Wi-Fi Direct** 199
  - Activate and Connect 199
  - On 199
- World Clock**
  - DST Settings 154

## **WPS PIN**

Pairing 198

## **WPS Push Button**

Connect 198

Pairing 198

Y

**Yahoo!** 183

## **YouTube**

High Quality 150, 176

Settings 175